

West
Virginia
Department of
Environmental
Protection
Watershed Branch

2009 Standard Operating Procedures



West Virginia
Department of Environmental Protection
Division of Water and Waste Management
Watershed Branch
601 57th Street S.E.
Charleston, WV 25303
(304) 926-0495
www.wvdep.org

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS	I
LIST OF FIGURES.....	VI
LIST OF TABLES	VII
LIST OF EQUATIONS	VII
CHAPTER I. INTRODUCTION TO WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH SAMPLING ACTIVITIES	1
FUNCTION OF THE WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH.....	1
SAMPLING PROGRAMS OF THE WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH	1
SCOPE OF SOP FOR WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH SAMPLING PROGRAMS	3
GENERAL QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL	4
CHAPTER II. INSTRUCTIONS FOR ASSESSING THE STREAM SITE (INCLUDING SETTING UP THE SITE, SITE DOCUMENTATION, AND GUIDELINES FOR COMPLETING THE STREAM ASSESSMENT FORMS).....	5
OVERVIEW.....	5
SECTION A. SETTING UP THE SITE	5
<i>Part 1. Initial Site Survey</i>	5
<i>Part 2. Accessing the Site</i>	6
A. Random Sites (EPA Probabilistic Sites).....	6
Alternate Sites	7
Locating the X-Site	9
Sliding the Reach	10
B. Target Sites	13
C. Duplicate Sites	15
D. Reference Sites and Potential Reference Sites	15
Reference Site Criteria	16
Determining Candidate Reference Sites While In the Field	19
SECTION B. SITE DOCUMENTATION	21
<i>Part 1. Coordinates and Global Positioning Systems (GPS)</i>	21
GPS Overview.....	21
Quick Operation of the Garmin III+ or V GPS Unit	22
Procedures for obtaining coordinates with a GARMIN GPS III+ or V	22
Procedures for checking/changing the datum with a GARMIN GPS III+ or V.....	23
GPS Quality Assurance/Quality Control	24
<i>Part 2. Photographic Documentation</i>	25
Photography Overview	25
Procedures for In the Field.....	25
Procedures for In the Office.....	27
Tagging the Photos with a Photo ID.....	27
Photos that are taken at sampling sites	27
Photos that are not taken at sampling sites	27
Photography Quality Assurance/Quality Control	28
SECTION C. GUIDELINES FOR COMPLETING THE STREAM ASSESSMENT FORMS	29
<i>Part 1. Description of Wadeable Benthic Stream Assessment Form</i>	29
<i>Front Side of All Pages</i>	29
PAGE 1.....	30
Stream Verification	30
PAGE 2.....	35
Site Activities and Disturbances (Including Roads)	35

<i>PAGE 3</i>	38
Physical Characterization	38
Sediment Characterization.....	39
Substrate Particle Layer Profile.....	39
Dominant Substrate Type and Reach Characterization	40
<i>PAGE 4</i>	41
Field Water Quality Measures	41
Stream Bank/Riparian Buffer Zone Vegetation/Cover Type	44
Riparian Vegetation Classification	44
<i>PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a</i>	47
EPA’s Rapid Habitat Assessment Form	47
EPA Rapid Habitat Assessment References.....	47
Riffle/Run Prevalence	49
Glide/Pool Prevalence Form (Low Gradient Macs-Type Sites Only)	53
<i>PAGE 7</i>	55
Non-RBP Parameters.....	55
PRS and Stressor Info	56
<i>PAGE 8</i>	57
Wildlife & Freshwater Mussel Observations.....	57
Trout Observations (For Sites that are not actively being sampled for Fish!).....	57
<i>PAGE 9</i>	58
Benthic Macroinvertebrate Collection Information.....	58
Benthic Substrate Sample Composition.....	60
Visual Estimation of Periphyton and Aquatic Plant Density.....	60
Periphyton Collection Information.....	61
<i>PAGE 10</i>	62
Landowner/Stakeholder Information	62
Photography Log.....	63
<i>Part 2. APPENDIX FORMS</i>	64
APPENDIX #1 - Stream Discharge (Flow).....	64
APPENDIX #2 - Stream Bank Erodibility and Channel Profile Measurements	65
Stream Bank Erodibility Factors.....	65
Estimated Channel Profile (Width to Depth Ratio).....	67
APPENDIX #3 – TMDL/Wadeable Benthic Appendix Form.....	68
Sketch of Assessment Reach and Comments	68
Stream Debris	69
APPENDIX #4 – Substrate Characterization (Pebble Count) including Gradient	69
<i>Assessment Form Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	70
<i>Forms Used In the Watershed Assessment Branch</i>	71
CHAPTER III. WATER COLLECTION PROTOCOLS	72
SECTION A. WATER QUALITY SONDES: CALIBRATION, MAINTENANCE, & USE	72
<i>Part 1. Sonde Calibration and Maintenance</i>	72
YSI 600XL Sonde/650 MDS Display Unit Calibration	72
YSI Display Unit	72
Maintenance of YSI Display Unit	73
2) Dissolved Oxygen.....	73
A) DO Probe Calibration	73
B) DO Probe Maintenance.....	75
C) DO Probe Diagnostic	76
D) DO Probe Accuracy	77
3) Conductivity.....	77
A) Conductivity Probe Calibration	77

B) Conductivity Probe Maintenance.....	78
C) Conductivity Probe Diagnostic	78
D) Conductivity Probe Accuracy.....	79
4) pH	79
A) pH Probe Calibration (a three-point style calibration)	79
B) Probe Maintenance and Troubleshooting.....	83
C) pH Probe Diagnostic (Nernst Equation Calculation)	84
D) pH Probe Accuracy	86
5) Temperature.....	86
Temperature Probe Accuracy	86
YSI Sonde Storage	86
Hydrolab Quanta G Calibration	87
1) Quanta G Display Unit	87
Maintenance of Quanta G Display.....	87
2) Dissolved Oxygen.....	87
A) DO Probe Calibration	87
B) DO Probe Maintenance.....	88
C) DO Probe Accuracy.....	89
3) Conductivity.....	89
A) Conductivity Probe Calibration	89
B) Conductivity Probe Maintenance.....	89
C) Conductivity Probe Accuracy.....	90
4) pH	90
A) pH Probe Calibration (a two-point style calibration)	90
B) pH Probe Maintenance	91
C) Conductivity Probe Accuracy.....	91
5) Temperature.....	91
Conductivity Probe Accuracy.....	91
Quanta G Probe Storage	91
<i>Part 2. Field Procedures</i>	<i>92</i>
Setting up the Water Quality Sample Site.....	92
<i>Sonde Quality Assurance/Quality Control.....</i>	<i>93</i>
SECTION B. WATER QUALITY SAMPLE COLLECTION AND PRESERVATION	94
<i>Materials and Reagents</i>	<i>94</i>
<i>Safety Precautions.....</i>	<i>95</i>
<i>Procedures for Collecting Water Quality Samples.....</i>	<i>95</i>
<i>Sample Preservation (Fixation, Filtration, & Holding).....</i>	<i>96</i>
Filtration.....	99
Protocols for Sample Filtration with Peristaltic Pump/Drill Apparatus (Dissolved Metals & Dissolved Nutrients) ...	99
Protocols for Sample Filtration using a Vacuum Pump (Dissolved Metals & Dissolved Nutrients).....	101
Fixation	103
Testing a sample with a pH test strip.....	105
Holding.....	105
<i>Water Quality Parameters</i>	<i>106</i>
<i>Water Sample Collection Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	<i>107</i>
Field Blanks	108
Duplicate Samples.....	109
CHAPTER IV. BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE PROTOCOLS	111
OVERVIEW.....	111
Definitions	111
Benthic Macroinvertebrates as Environmental Indicators.....	111
Basis of Sampling Method.....	111

<i>Selecting Sampling Sites</i>	112
SECTION A. BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE SAMPLING	115
<i>Materials and Reagents</i>	115
<i>Field Safety Precautions</i>	116
<i>Sample Collection Methods</i>	116
A. Rectangular Dip Net (Riffle/Run Habitats = Comparable).....	116
B. D-net (Riffle/Run Habitat = Comparable).....	121
C. D-net – Multi-habitat Approach (Low Gradient Streams, Glide/Pool Habitat=Non-Comparable).....	121
D. Hand Picking (Small narrow streams with minimal/interstitial flow = Non-Comparable)	122
<i>Sample Preservation Methods</i>	123
<i>Laboratory Documentation or Check-In</i>	123
<i>Benthic Sampling Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	124
SECTION B. LABORATORY PROCESSING OF BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE SAMPLES	125
<i>Materials and Supplies</i>	125
<i>Laboratory Safety Precautions</i>	126
<i>Benthic Sample Processing Methods</i>	126
<i>Laboratory Processing Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	130
Percent Sorting Efficiency (PSE)	131
SECTION C. IDENTIFICATION OF BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATES	131
<i>Materials and Supplies</i>	131
<i>List of Taxonomic References</i>	132
<i>Safety Precautions</i>	134
<i>Macroinvertebrate Identification Procedures</i>	134
<i>Laboratory Identification Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	137
Percent Difference in Enumeration (PDE).....	137
Percent Taxonomic Difference (PTD)	137
SECTION D. BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE DATA ANALYSIS	139
<i>Part 1. West Virginia Stream Condition Index (WVSCI)</i>	139
WVSCI Reference	139
WVSCI Overview	139
Restrictions for Calculating the WVSCI	140
Using the WVSCI for Data Analysis.....	141
<i>Part 2. Dirty Null Stressor Identification Model</i>	141
CHAPTER V. PERIPHYTON PROTOCOLS	143
<i>Periphyton Overview</i>	143
<i>Materials and Supplies</i>	143
<i>Field Safety Precautions</i>	143
<i>Field Sampling Procedures</i>	144
<i>Laboratory Methods</i>	145
<i>Periphyton Data Assessment</i>	146
<i>Periphyton Quality Assurance and Quality Control</i>	147
CHAPTER VI. STREAM FLOW MEASUREMENT	148
SECTION A. SUM OF PARTIAL DISCHARGES METHOD	148
<i>Materials and Supplies</i>	149
<i>Operation and Maintenance of Flo-Mate</i>	150
Theory of Operation (From the Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate Manual, 1990)	151
Flo-Mate Settings	152
Maintenance of Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate.....	153
Cleaning	153

Zero Check and Adjust	154
Zero Check Procedure	154
Zero Adjust Procedure.....	154
Flow Meter Accuracy	155
Using the Flo-Mate.....	155
<i>Stream Flow Measurement Procedures</i>	157
Setting up the Transect	158
Taking Flow Measurements	159
Calculating Flow Using a Spreadsheet.....	161
SECTION B. MEASURING FLOW USING A BUCKET AND STOP WATCH	161
FLOW MEASUREMENT QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL.....	161
CHAPTER VII. SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION (INCLUDING GRADIENT)	163
MATERIALS AND SUPPLIES	163
PROCEDURES	163
<i>Part 1. Establishing Reach and Transects</i>	163
<i>Part 2. Substrate Measurement (AKA Pebble Count), Thalweg Profile, and Bankfull Height</i>	164
<i>Part 3. Gradient Measurement</i>	166
Measurement Methodology	166
Handheld Eye Level.....	167
Water Level Method	167
SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION DATA ANALYSIS.....	168
SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL	168
CHAPTER VIII. MISCELLANEOUS SAMPLING	169
SECTION A. FIELD BLANKS AND DUPLICATES.....	169
<i>Overview</i>	169
<i>Part 1. Field Blanks</i>	169
Obtaining the Field Blank Water	169
Field Blank Field Procedures	170
<i>Part 2. Duplicate Samples</i>	170
Wadeable Benthic Sites (Random, Targeted, and TMDL Bio)	170
TMDL (Water Quality and Limited Habitat)	171
<i>Field Blanks and Duplicates Quality Assurance/Quality Control</i>	171
SECTION B. SOURCE SAMPLING PROCEDURES FOR TMDL MONITORING	172
<i>Source Sampling Overview</i>	172
AMD/AML	172
Permitted Sources	174
Other Sources.....	174
SECTION C. AMBIENT WATER QUALITY MONITORING.....	174
CHAPTER IX. FIELD EQUIPMENT CHECKLIST.....	175
CHAPTER X. CHEAT SHEET	179

List of Figures

FIGURE 1. AN EXAMPLE OF SLIDING THE REACH TO AVOID LARGER/SMALL CONFLUENCES, LAKES, PONDS, ETC. (USED FOR RANDOM SITES ONLY).	11
FIGURE 2. COVER OF EPA’S RAPID BIOASSESSMENT PROTOCOLS FOR USE IN WADEABLE STREAMS AND RIVERS (SECOND EDITION)	48
FIGURE 3. TEMPERATURE/PH CURVE FOR PH 7 BUFFER SOLUTION.....	80
FIGURE 4. TEMPERATURE/PH CURVE FOR PH 10 BUFFER SOLUTION.....	81
FIGURE 5. TEMPERATURE/PH CURVE FOR PH 4 BUFFER SOLUTION.....	82
FIGURE 6. THE NERNST EQUATION.....	85
FIGURE 7. DIAGRAM COMPARING THE DIMENSIONS AND NUMBER OF KICKS NECESSARY TO SAMPLE 1 M ² OF A RECTANGULAR FRAME DIP NET VERSUS A D-FRAME DIP NET	115
FIGURE 8. PHOTO OF MATERIALS USED IN BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE SAMPLING	115
FIGURE 9. PHOTO OF RECTANGULAR FRAME DIP NET BEING PLACED ON STREAM BOTTOM.....	116
FIGURE 10. PHOTOGRAPH OF THE BRUSHING PROCESS IN FRONT OF THE NET.	117
FIGURE 11. PHOTOGRAPH OF THE KICKING PROCESS IN FRONT OF THE NET.....	117
FIGURE 12. PHOTOGRAPHS SHOWING THE REMOVAL OF THE NET FROM THE WATER WITH AN UPSTREAM MOTION.	118
FIGURE 13. PHOTOGRAPH OF EMPTYING THE NET INTO A 5- GALLON BUCKET PARTIALLY FILLED WITH STREAM WATER.	118
FIGURE 14. PHOTOGRAPH OF BIOLOGIST INSPECTING BENTHIC SAMPLE AND REMOVING ROUGH MATERIAL (ROCKS, STICKS, AND LEAVES)	119
FIGURE 15. PHOTOGRAPH OF SOFT, ORGANIC MATERIAL PLACED AND STORED IN A TEMPORARY CONTAINER.....	119
FIGURE 16. PHOTOGRAPH OF BIOLOGIST TRANSFERRING THE HARD, INORGANIC MATERIAL (E.G., FINE GRAVEL, SAND, AND SILT) TO A SAMPLE JAR ½ FILLED WITH ALCOHOL.	120
FIGURE 17. PHOTOGRAPH OF BIOLOGIST INSPECTING TRANSFERRING THE SOFT, ORGANIC MATERIAL (E.G., SHREDDED LEAVES AND BENTHIC ORGANISMS) TO THE SAMPLE JAR.	120
FIGURE 18. PHOTOGRAPH OF A HOME-MADE GRIDDED SORTING TRAY FEATURING A RANDOM NUMBER MATRIX ON THE BOTTOM.	125
FIGURE 19. PHOTOGRAPH OF A GRIDDED SORTING TRAY WITH SAMPLE CONTENTS EVENLY DISTRIBUTED IN WATER.	127
FIGURE 20. PHOTOGRAPH OF A GRIDDED SORTING TRAY WITH 5 GRIDS RANDOMLY REMOVED. NOTE THAT HE SEQUENCE OF NUMBERS ON THE BOTTOM OF THE TRAY KNOWN BY REFERENCING A PIECE OF PAPER THAT HAS THE LOCATIONS OF EACH GRID MAPPED OUT.	128
FIGURE 21. PHOTOGRAPH OF BIOLOGIST SORTING A BENTHIC SAMPLE UNDER AN ILLUMINATED MAGNIFIER. NOTE THE ENAMEL PAN FILLED WITH SOME WATER AND THE TEMPORARY SAMPLE CONTAINER.....	128
FIGURE 22. EXAMPLE OF A BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE LAB SHEET.	136
FIGURE 23. WVSCI VS. RBP HABITAT SCORING CATEGORIES	141
FIGURE 24. CROSS SECTION OF STREAM CHANNEL	148
FIGURE 25. COVER OF MODEL 2000 MARSH-McBIRNEY FLO-MATE INSTRUCTION MANUAL.....	150
FIGURE 26. KEY FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS FOR THE MODEL 2000 MARSH-McBIRNEY FLO-MATE	152

List of Tables

TABLE 1. AN EXAMPLE OF A TYPICAL RANDOM SITE LIST	8
TABLE 2. TYPICAL FREQUENCY OF GPS READINGS FOR VARIOUS WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH ACTIVITIES	22
TABLE 3. SUBSTRATE SIZE CLASSIFICATION FOR SUBSTRATE LAYER PROFILE AND DOMINANT SUBSTRATE TYPE AND REACH CHARACTERIZATION	40
TABLE 4. EXAMPLES OF FLAG VALUES USED ON THE FIELD FORMS	42
TABLE 5. TOTAL RBP SCORE CATEGORIES.....	53
TABLE 6. SUBSTRATE SIZE CLASSES FOR BENTHIC INORGANIC SUBSTRATE COMPOSITION	60
TABLE 7. SUBSTRATE SIZE CLASSES FOR SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION (PEBBLE COUNTS)	70
TABLE 8. FROM APPENDIX D TABLE 2 OF THE YSI OPERATING MANUAL (PAGE 227).....	75
TABLE 9. PRESERVATION METHODS AND HOLDING TIMES	98
TABLE 10. EXAMPLE OF FLOW MEASUREMENT FORM: RECORDING FIELD DATA.....	157
TABLE 11. SUBSTRATE SIZE CLASSES FOR SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION (PEBBLE COUNTS)	165

List of Equations

EQUATION 1. THE NERNST EQUATION	85
EQUATION 2. PERCENT SORTING EFFICIENCY (PSE).....	131
EQUATION 3. PERCENT DIFFERENCE IN ENUMERATION (PDE).....	137
EQUATION 4. PERCENT TAXONOMIC DIFFERENCE (PTD)	138
EQUATION 5. CALCULATION OF PARTIAL STREAM FLOW OR DISCHARGE	149
EQUATION 6. CALCULATION OF PERCENT GRADIENT.....	168

Chapter I. INTRODUCTION TO WATERSHED ASSESSMENT BRANCH SAMPLING ACTIVITIES

Function of the Watershed Assessment Branch

The purpose of the Watershed Assessment Branch (WAB) is to collect waterbody (*i.e.*, streams, rivers, and lakes) data in order to determine their quality in WV according to the Federal Clean Water Act. This is accomplished by visiting hundreds of streams and lakes throughout the state collecting water and biological samples (*e.g.*, fish, benthic macroinvertebrates, and periphyton) and assessing the quality of the instream and streamside habitat. The data collected is used to determine which streams and lakes are in violation of water quality standards or impaired biologically.

All of the streams and lakes in the state are divided into 32 watersheds based on the USGS 8-digit HUCs (Hydrologic Unit Codes). These watersheds are sampled on a five-year rotation (aka the rotating Watershed Basin Schedule) so that any given year approximately one-fifth of the watersheds are being intensively sampled and assessed. The data produced by the sampling efforts of WAB provides information regarding the severity of pollution, the potential for cleanup, and supports the implementation of management and control measures.

Sampling Programs of the Watershed Assessment Branch

WAB consists of many different sampling programs that are each unique in their sampling methods, protocols, and intensities of habitat assessment. The sampling programs include:

Wadeable Streams Monitoring occurs on streams that are considered to be wadeable (*i.e.*, easily traversed without having to use a boat). This applies to almost all 1st-4th order streams, but may include some smaller 5th and 6th order streams. The components of sampling include water quality and biological assemblage samples (mainly benthic macroinvertebrates and periphyton, but sometimes fish) as well as an intensive habitat assessment. Two differing strategies of wadeable stream monitoring are as follows:

Random (Probabilistic) Sampling is a sampling subset within the Watershed Assessment Branch designed to allow unbiased, statistical interpretations of water quality using water chemistry, biological, and habitat data. The state is further subdivided into Level III Ecoregions statewide and examined on a 100k scale. The sample stations include 1-4th order streams (based on the NHD Plus stream coverage-100k scale) and are weighted based on the relative abundance of those orders in WV. Sampling does not coincide with the rotating Watershed Basin Schedule and occurs primarily in the Spring/Early Summer (April-Early

June). Fish surveys to monitor populations & communities will be conducted on stations that are target and have watershed drainages greater than 2000 acres (+/- 10%). The fish surveys will occur later in the summer during a fish index period.

Targeted Sampling is designed to investigate:

1. Streams that have no previous data collected,
2. Streams that have only outdated data collected,
3. Streams with data previously collected that rendered inconclusive results (e.g., gray WVSCI stream, streams with prior collections),
4. Streams that have known impairments (i.e., legacy 303(d), AMD, Biological impairments),
5. Streams of particular public interest (i.e., high-quality streams, trout streams, streams undergoing restoration projects).

This targeted sampling is driven by the rotating Watershed Basin Schedule and sampling is a one-time event that occurs mainly in the Summer/early fall (June-October). Fish surveys occur on a limited number of select larger streams.

TMDL stands for Total Maximum Daily Load. A targeted sampling strategy is used to gather information about the full extent of pollution impairments (i.e., which streams are problem areas or not and what are the sources of pollution). The resultant data is used to develop and calibrate TMDL models for streams listed on the 303(d) list. Candidate streams for TMDL development coincide with the rotating Watershed Basin Schedule and sampling occurs monthly for one year. The components of sampling include water quality samples and a limited habitat assessment. At streams with biological impairments sampling includes a one-time biological sample and intensive habitat assessment.

Lake Monitoring uses the rotating Watershed Basin Schedule much like TMDL sampling and the targeted Wadeable Stream Monitoring. Sampling occurs on targeted lakes (within the watershed group for that year) four times during the summer months (June - September or May - August). The number of stations per lake varies and is generally proportional to the size of the lake. The components of sampling include a vertical water chemistry profile and some limited habitat observations.

Ambient Network is a bimonthly statewide trend monitoring program at 26 targeted stations on major rivers and streams for water quality constituents. The ambient network is perhaps the oldest program within the Watershed Assessment Branch with data existing as far back as the 1960s. The components of sampling include water quality samples and limited habitat observations.

Long Term Monitoring Stations, also called LTMS, are designed to develop long-term biological trend data at targeted wadeable streams scattered throughout the state. Stations are selected to represent a wide array of unique and varying impairments (Acid Mine Drainage, Acid Rain, Sediment, etc.) as well as represent best attainable or reference conditions. Some Ambient Network stations are included. Sampling occurs once per year and includes biological, intensive habitat, and water quality components. Some selected stations may also be surveyed for fish.

Special Surveys or Projects are temporary targeted sampling designs conducted on request from internal West Virginia Department of Environmental Protection (WVDEP) programs, external agencies, private industries, or public groups/individuals that are concerned about the water quality of particular streams or segments of streams and require additional data to supplement their own data. These surveys or projects are often done in association with land transactions, spills, pending legal actions/litigation, permit applications/renewals, emerging pollution issues, or as a part of larger studies. Special Surveys are more limited in scope in that they concentrate on a very specific area and the stations are only visited once or twice. Special Projects are more long term and widespread. They may involve monthly sampling at a large number of sites over the course of a year or two. The components of sampling vary greatly depending on the survey or project needs and may include any combination of the following: simple habitat observations, water quality samples, deployable sondes, biological samples, limited habitat assessments, or intensive habitat assessments.

Deployable Sondes are often used to provide continuous water quality data (time-series) in support of other sampling programs (e.g., TMDL, Special Projects). Deployment and retrieval of the sonde may be accompanied by a water quality sample and habitat observations at targeted locations.

Monitoring Programs in development:

Wetlands Monitoring
Non-Wadeable Streams and Large Rivers

Scope of SOP for Watershed Assessment Branch Sampling Programs

The following SOP chapters and sections are designed primarily for use with the **Wadeable Streams Monitoring (Random and Targeted)**, **TMDL**, and **Long Term Monitoring Stations** programs which cover the bulk of sampling activities by WAB. Other sampling programs (e.g., **Lakes, Ambient, and Deployable Sondes**) may have their own SOP document which should be consulted primarily. Since these sampling programs may share aspects/components with the other sampling programs (e.g., GPS data collection, Sonde Calibration and Use, Flow Measurement, Photography) their SOP documents may defer to the following chapters and sections for further reference.

In addition, it should be noted that the fish sampling protocols are also housed in its own SOP document at this time.

In some cases, a **Special Survey** or **Project** may be unique enough that it may require the development of its own SOP document. However, the majority of the special surveys or projects can adequately rely on the following SOP sections to cover its sampling components.

General Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols presented in this SOP document and calibrated to sampling standards. These sessions occur at a field location to provide real examples and situations. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors.

In the field, individuals who are more experienced in using these sampling protocols will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results before they are allowed to work solo or lead a sampling team.

Several staff meetings also occur throughout the year to update field personnel (those collecting the data) and office personnel (those using, analyzing, and distributing the data) with any running changes to protocol and address reoccurring problems and issues in front of the two groups. These staff meetings also serve as communication forums between field and office personnel to help each group better understand where and how the data is collected, how the data is used in fulfilling WVDEP's Clean Water Act requirements, and the specific needs of each group.

This SOP document is annually reviewed for completeness and accuracy coinciding with the mandatory training sessions and printed hard copies are provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field. In addition, any changes that occur between annual reviews of the SOP document are updated in the SOP document's electronic format and marked with a revision number. The revised SOPs are announced via email and made available internally via the WVDEP computer network at:

Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\SOP'S\SOP2009

The field personnel are to print copies of the revised SOP pages and insert them into their existing hard copy for use until a new annual hard copy is provided.

Chapter II. INSTRUCTIONS FOR ASSESSING THE STREAM SITE (INCLUDING SETTING UP THE SITE, SITE DOCUMENTATION, AND GUIDELINES FOR COMPLETING THE STREAM ASSESSMENT FORMS)

Overview

The most important aspect of sampling that the Watershed Assessment Branch (WAB) does is the careful documentation of the location and conditions during a sampling event. This may be as simple as documenting the general conditions of the water (*i.e.*, was it turbid, did it smell, did it rain recently). Or it may be as complex as physically measuring various aspects of the stream habitat.

The following is an instruction of how use the Wadeable Benthic Stream Assessment Form to evaluate various stream assessment parameters. This chapter is intended to provide information on interpreting each parameter as well as identifying the value(s) of resultant data. Some of the parameters from other assessment procedures (*e.g.*, Benthic Sampling, Sonde Readings, GPS, etc.) are recorded on the form as well. You should consult the appropriate chapters and sections of this SOP to gain further knowledge about those parameters.

Also, since this form is the most complex and complete that WAB uses (other forms like TMDL are more limited in that they may only contain certain elements of what is seen on the Wadeable Benthic form), this chapter should adequately cover how to fill out the other forms as well.

Section A. Setting up the Site

Part 1. Initial Site Survey

A field crew typically consists of two individuals charged with collecting habitat and biological/physicochemical data (*i.e.*, water quality). In the case of some sampling that involves only physicochemical and some limited habitat data (*e.g.*, TMDL sampling) the field crew may consist of just one individual operating on a solo basis. This usually only occurs after the sampling station has been thoroughly established after some sort of initial visit.

Throughout the following discussions, the term "Geomorph" will be used to describe the crewmember in charge of collecting habitat information. "Biomorph" is the term used to describe the crewmember in charge of collecting biological and physicochemical data. In the case of a solo sampler, these roles are both played out by the same individual.

USGS topographic maps with a 1:24,000 scale will be used to navigate to sampling sites (GIS or Geographic Information System maps on Laptop, County Maps, or Gazetteer Maps are supplemental). The map coordinator should have marked all sites or stations (pink for random sites, yellow for target sites) before sampling begins. After the location of the stream site has been confirmed, the Geomorph is responsible for establishing a 100-meter assessment area and will actively traverse the stream from one end to the other taking note of pertinent habitat information and measuring the 100 m reach. **Note that the Geomorph will avoid walking in the stream until physicochemical samples have been collected and avoid stepping in riffles that may be used in macroinvertebrate and periphyton sampling. THERE SHOULD BE NO DEVIATION FROM THE ABOVE PROTOCOL. THE GEOMORPH MUST COVER THE ENTIRE 100 m STREAM REACH TO ACCURATELY COMPLETE THE HABITAT FORM. THIS CANNOT BE DONE STANDING AT ONE END OF THE REACH OR FROM THE VEHICLE!** The Geomorph will perform other duties concurrent with the establishment of the 100 m assessment reach (*outlined in Chapter II. Section C. Part 1-Description of Wadeable Benthic Stream Assessment Form*). Procedures specific to each sample type are discussed below.

Part 2. Accessing the Site

Due to the remoteness of some sites (usually reference and random), traversing to the sample site may require long strenuous hikes over difficult terrain; NOT DANGEROUS TERRAIN! If a long hike is necessary to get to a site, carefully consider the terrain and your personal ability and health to access the site. If you feel it is too difficult (e.g., too far to hike or too deep to wade) or dangerous (e.g., steep banks) to get to the site or assess it, do not attempt it. Discuss it with other sampling teams who may be willing to try to get the site later. **DO NOT NAVIGATE TO ANY ASSESSMENT SITE THAT PRESENTS A DANGEROUS SITUATION TO YOU OR ANOTHER TEAM MEMBER!**

A. Random Sites (EPA Probabilistic Sites)

An attempt should be made to access random sites no matter how far the hike unless it appears dangerous or too difficult to do so. The map coordinator should be notified and consulted about all sites which were not accessed due to dangerous or difficult conditions as a visit to that site may be attempted by another sampling team that may be better able to reach the site.

Beginning in 2007 the Random Sampling Program switched from a statewide watershed specific sampling effort to a statewide ecoregional effort based on Omernik's ecoregions. The state has been divided into 3 major ecoregions going West to East:

1. 70-Western Allegheny Plateau
2. 69-Central Appalachians
3. 67-Ridge and Valley

Twenty-six (Thirteen new sites and Thirteen revisits from 5 years prior) in each of the 3 ecoregions must be fully sampled for water quality, benthos, periphyton, and habitat each year. Additionally, we will be conducting fish surveys at sites that have drainage areas of 2000 acres (+/- 10%) or greater. Target sites are defined as riffle/run habitat, wadeable, and can be sampled using kick protocols that result in comparable data.

The site lists for each ecoregion will consist of about 5-8 samples. **See Table 1 below for an example of a site list.** Since you know you will be visiting all of the sites on the list, they may be sampled in any order. This will allow you to work more efficiently, as some sites may not be adjacent on the list but not necessarily in numerical order. For example (**referring to Table 1 below**): If you were working the stream list from the mouth up, you might sample Job Run and Badgely Fork first, since they are close to each other, but not in random order.

Coordinates for the site are included in the stream list. In addition, GIS coverages of the sites will be available for use on the field laptops. These coordinates should approximately match what is plotted out on topographical maps. Unfortunately, these coordinates are based on stream GIS coverages that are not updated as quickly as a stream can cut or move through the landscape (naturally or human assisted). So you must do your best (*i.e.*, use best professional judgment) to translate the coordinates to a real stream site on the ground. **See Locating the X-Site for more information below.**

Alternate Sites

During the process of visiting the sites on the list, there will be a few that cannot be sampled for various reasons (*e.g.*, dry, too deep, landowner access denial or extreme physical barriers, etc.). To replace these sites, new alternate sites will be added to the work load. These sites are from the same randomly selected pool of sites as the primary sites and will be chosen to replace sites bumped off the primary list by ecoregion (*i.e.*, a site not done in ecoregion 70 will be replaced by a site in ecoregion 70). In addition, new sites will replace new sites and revisit sites will replace revisit sites. Some alternate sites may be handwritten on to site lists that have not yet been taken to the field. Others will be assembled into alternate site lists after the primary lists are completed (a deviation from prior random sampling efforts) to prevent inefficiencies that may arise from multiple teams working in one ecoregion and not being able to communicate what sites have been sampled. At some point, there will be a final alternate sampling list for each ecoregion that will be used to obtain the final sites needed to meet the per ecoregion goal of twenty-six sites. It is important to note that these lists will need to be completed in the order of the random numbers to maintain the unbiased probabilistic design.

Table 1. An example of a typical Random Site List

Western Alleghney Plateau-Lower Middle

R#	ANCODE	STREAM NAME	Latitude			Longitude			TOPONAME	Date	Initials
R#5008	WVKC-39-{2.4}	Sang Run	38	41	0.42	81	9	25.99	Tariff		
R#5010	WVK-34-{32.0}	SPRING CR	38	51	22.11	81	20	15.18	Spencer		
<i>X site is just DS of Elk Run, may need to slide reach to exclude this stream</i>											
R#2085-R	WVK-46-B-{1.2}	Hog Jowls Run	39	5	2.40	81	8	11.44	MacFarlan		
R#5088	WVKC-10-P-1-A-{2.1}	Job Run	38	56	34.54	80	57	45.72	Tanner		
R#5104	WVKC-31-G-{1.9}	McGregor Run	39	18	44.41	81	1	52.57	Ellenboro		
<i>Field Blank at this site</i>											
R#5137	WVKC-10-T-15-A-{1.8}	Badgley Fork	39	11	0.59	81	32	43.58	South Parkersburg		
<i>Perform Duplicate Sampling at this Site</i>											
2007 Random Parameters: Acidity (Hot) Alk, Sulfate, Fecal Coliform, TSS, Tot. Phosphate, TKN, NO₂-NO₃-N, Ba, Mg, Al (T&D), Cu (D-low det) Fe (T&D), Mn, Zn (D-low det), Ca, Total Se, Chlorides											

Bold/Green text indicates potential fish sites.

Locating the X-Site

Sampling stations for random sites are marked with an **X (highlighted in pink)** on USGS 1:24,000 scale topographic maps. **Note that these maps are recycled and older sites (both targeted and random) may appear on the topos. Therefore, you should take great care in matching up the stream name, ANCode, and random number written next to the site with what is on the stream list.** This spot is referred to as the **X-site** and is the downstream end of a 100 m reach that is to be assessed. Some situations require sliding the reach and thus the X is not at the downstream end (*see **Sliding the Reach below for details***). **Note: Always collect physicochemical samples and GPS coordinates at the X-site for random stations. If possible, get coordinates from the center of the stream channel and let the GPS run for several minutes (5-10) before recording the latitude and longitude.** Sampling teams should use all available means to ensure that they are at the correct location; including Laptop GIS programs, topographic, county, and/or gazetteer maps, or (as in the case of revisit sites) previous visit photocopies which include directions to the site, hand-drawn maps, and photos. GPS units should also be used to confirm the X-site latitude and longitude that is provided on the list for each random station. Using your GPS, if you can get one half of the coordinates to match almost exactly and the other half within a reasonable distance (no more than a couple of seconds), and then you have adequately located the random site. If the GPS coordinates and the given X-site coordinates differ by more than a couple of seconds, re-check your position. **You should make an attempt to get an exact match if possible.**

⇒ **NOTE: For revisit sites use the coordinates provided on the site list only as the coordinates on the previous visit photocopy are in a different datum. However, the hand-drawn map from the previous visit photocopy will be very useful to locating the exact same X-site that was established during the previous visit. You should make an attempt to get an exact match to the previous visit's X-site.**

There will be stations where the GPS unit will not track satellites and thus confirmation of the X-site coordinates may be impossible. Team members should collaborate in these instances and utilize their best professional judgment (BPJ) to decide where the X-site is located. In such a case, finely tuned map reading skills are important.

After the X-site has been confirmed (or located via best professional judgment), the Geomorph will establish a 100-meter assessment area. If there are no riffle/run habitats within 100 m reach, the site is considered non-target for random sites and should not be sampled. **For random sites, our target stream has riffle/run habitat, is wadeable, and can be sampled using kick protocols**

that result in comparable data. If you are denied access to a site either by landowners (i.e., direct verbal communication or by best professional judgment that you should not ignore posted signs or fences) or by physical barriers (not gates or fences, but natural obstacles that involve dangerous conditions like steep gorges, forest fires, or floods), classify the site as “target” or “not-target” based on best professional judgment and clues that may be gathered about the stream. A good example is an agriculture stream where you are denied permission to the site but can see it well enough to properly classify it. If you cannot see the site, use GIS coverage data, information from locals, what you know about other streams nearby, and what you can gather about the stream from other accessible points up or downstream. It is better that you make an educated guess in the field rather than someone making a wild guess in the office. **If you get coordinates at your location and it is not at the X-site, put the coordinate information in the drawing and site verification notes. DO NOT PUT COORDINATES FROM A LOCKED GATE OR A LANDOWNERS HOUSE IN THE COORDINATES SECTION FOR THE X-SITE!**

Sliding the Reach

There are some conditions that may require “sliding” the 100 m stream reach around features we do not wish to sample across. Do not proceed upstream into a lower order stream or downstream into a larger order stream when laying out the stream reach. The map coordinator will note on the stream list any random 100 m reach that might require sliding due to the confluence of streams. If such confluence is encountered, note the distance and mark the confluence as the reach end. Make up for the loss of the reach length by sliding the other end of the reach an equivalent distance away from the X-site, as shown in **Figure 1** below. **Note: the confluence must be within the initial 100 m reach for this sliding to apply.** Do not slide the reach to avoid human disturbances like bridges, culverts, rip/rap, or channelized areas. If you have to slide the reach, make sure it is documented on the stream assessment form and include why it was moved and where. Include this information in the sketch of the assessment area.

Additionally, if the reach contains a lake, reservoir, or pond, mark the water body as the reach end and make up for the loss of the reach length by moving the other end of the reach an equivalent distance from the X-site (**See Figure 1 below**). However, if the X-site is completely within a lake, pond, or valley fill, no sampling can occur and only the front page of the habitat form needs to be filled out describing the situation thoroughly. **Be sure to take photographs of the situation including the reach slid downstream of the X-site and the area above the X-site.**

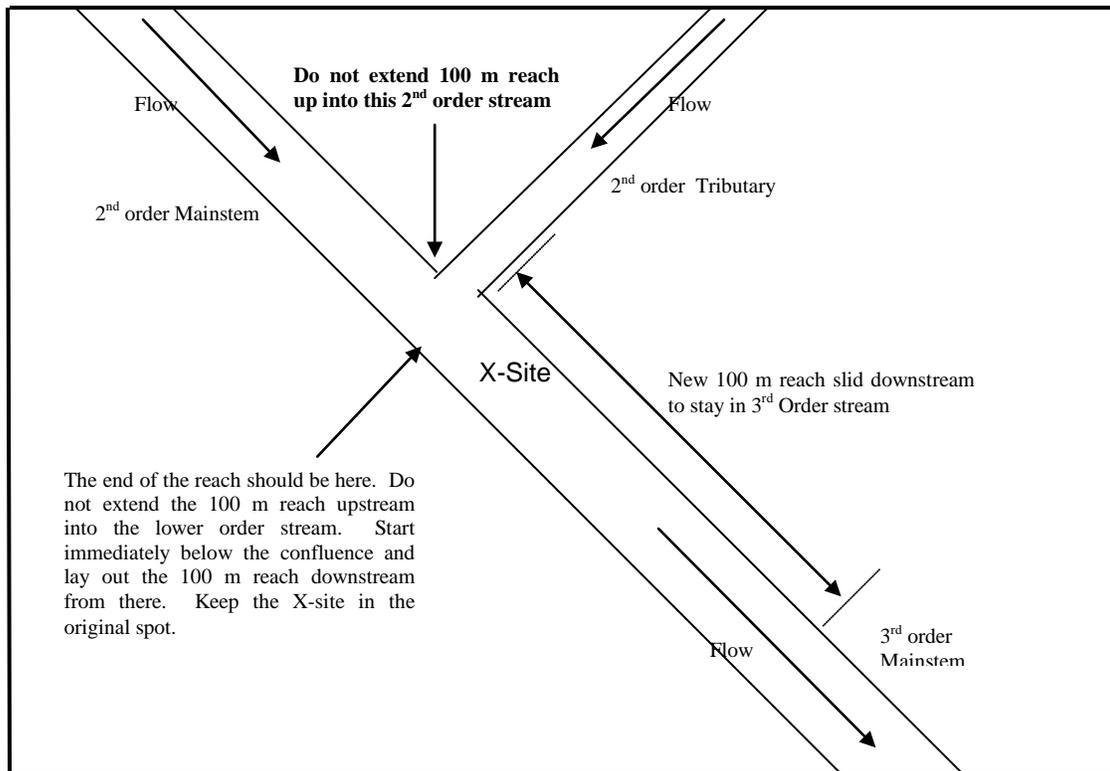


Figure 1. An example of sliding the reach to avoid larger/small confluences, lakes, ponds, etc. (used FOR RANDOM SITES ONLY).

In some cases a randomly site's X-site is located below a source or tributary with a significant water quality impact to the stream and there is inadequate room to collect benthos in the area below the sources. In such situations, it would be best to treat the source or tributary with significant water chemistry issues using the same rules as sliding the reach downstream around the X-site to avoid crossing stream orders (**see above in Figure 1**) so that the X-site and benthic collection area are in similar water quality.

It is important to describe in detail on the assessment form any deviations from the standard layout.

In order to determine the stream reach, the Geomorph will actively traverse the stream (NOTE: the Geomorph will avoid walking in the stream until physicochemical samples have been collected and avoid stepping in riffles that may be used in macroinvertebrate and periphyton sampling) from one end to the other taking note of pertinent habitat information and measuring the 100 m area. The Geomorph will perform other duties concurrent with the establishment of the 100 m assessment area (outlined below in detail). Random sites have specific requirements for physicochemical sampling. **The list of parameters that must**

*be collected at all random sites can be found under Chapter III-WATER
COLLECTION PROTOCOLS and on the*

CHEAT SHEET in Chapter II at the end of this document.

B. Target Sites

Target sites should be assessed if at all possible, even if they are more than one mile from the vehicle, unless it appears dangerous or too difficult to do so. Some sites that are suspected of this may have notes relating to the acceptable distance and conditions under which the site may be moved. The map coordinator should be notified and consulted about all sites which were not accessed due to dangerous or difficult conditions as an alternate site may be inserted to replace that site.

Sampling stations for target sites are marked with an **X (highlighted in yellow)** and with the sample year on USGS 1:24,000 scale topographic maps. **Note that these maps are recycled and older sites (both targeted and random) may appear on the topos. Therefore, you should take great care in matching up the stream name, ANCode, and sample year written next to the site with what is on the stream list.** If possible, the assessment reach should be established above bridges. Additionally, bridges should not be included in the assessment reach, if possible. Target sites include high quality, severely impaired, moderately impaired, non-impaired, unassessed, and 303(d) listed streams. These sites differ from random sites as indicated by the following:

- 1) There are no predetermined coordinates for the X-site unless otherwise noted on the stream list. The latitude and longitude will be determined after the sample site has been chosen.
- 2) There is more latitude in making decisions on where to conduct the stream assessment (*i.e.*, you can more easily and readily make micro adjustments to the stream reach location).
- 3) Latitude and longitude (coordinates) and physicochemical samples are always collected at the downstream terminus of the 100 m assessment reach at all times (sliding the reach is not applicable).
- 4) In general, streams are sampled at the first readily accessible riffle/run upstream from the mouth and/or above tributaries or potential sources of interest.
- 5) Assessments are conducted upstream of and should not include road bridges/culverts if possible.

It is important to keep in mind that riffle/run sites are preferable to MACS sites when it comes time to report data as they are more abundant and only riffle/run data can be used to calculate a comparable WVSCI score. For example, if a riffle/run site can be found a ¼ mile further upstream without going above a significant tributary or changing land use (agriculture, etc),

then go and sample the riffle/run site. In general, do not collect a MACS sample unless the stream list indicates that the site is of special concern and should be sampled regardless of the habitat type present. Describe in detail the type of MACS habitat present in case a future visit is scheduled.

Note: If a site is moved from the location marked on the map then the form should be filled out appropriately noting why the original intended site was not suitable (see *Section C. Guidelines for Completing the Stream Assessment Forms for more info*). In addition, you should also indicate on the topo maps provided in the stream list packet where the site was moved to with an arrow drawn from the original site to the new site.

Some conditions may require establishing the stream reach around features we do not wish to sample across. Do not establish a 100 m reach that includes a nasty discharge (e.g., AMD tributary, point source outfall, etc.). If a water quality impaired tributary is encountered within the chosen stream reach, move above the confluence a short distance, establish a new 100 m reach, and perform all WAB protocols. Additionally, fill out a form and collect appropriate physicochemical samples downstream of the confluence and from the mouth of the polluted tributary or outfall/source. If the nasty tributary is not on your stream list or the stream list for other sampling crews, conduct a full WAB assessment on the nasty tributary. **Provide detailed notes and document the specifics of the assessments and samples collected for all of the above.**

There is no definitive list of physicochemical parameters for target sites other than field readings (water quality sonde parameters) and fecal coliform bacteria. Sampling for specific parameters either indicated on the stream list or is determined on-site and is based on the surrounding land usage (i.e., total phosphorus in agricultural areas when a problem is suspected, or metals in areas of mining). GIS software and coverages on laptops detailing the land use of each stream will be provided to the team with the topographic maps and stream list. These maps should be consulted to provide insight as to what parameters should be measured at the site. Another important way to get information about the land use is to ask and start a dialogue with local landowners and listen carefully to what they say about the stream and its upstream uses. These talks will often provide vital clues as to what may be occurring in the stream. You may also observe what is in the upstream watershed if you pass through it on the way to the site or the next site.

In some instances, a stream may appear to have an excellent water quality and habitat upstream of the targeted site. If this is the case, make all attempts to sample the segment as a potential reference site or make notes about the stream segment and report it to other sampling teams and personnel to determine if it is

a possible reference site candidate later (**see Reference Sites and Potential Reference Sites below**).

C. Duplicate Sites

In order to fulfill quality assurance and quality control or QA/QC requirements (**see Chapter VIII. Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates**), a select number of duplicate sites will be assessed in each watershed. The stream list will indicate where to conduct a duplicate sample. However, it should be noted that the stream listed is only a randomly picked site at which to complete a duplicate and serves as a reminder to conduct a duplicate sample. In fact, a duplicate can be performed at any site that meets certain needs. The assessment area should contain a large enough riffle/run area to obtain two complete benthic macroinvertebrate samples without any overlap (4 kicks versus 4 kicks). Make sure the instream substrate & velocity of the duplicate benthic sampling sites match as closely as possible (*i.e.*, do not have one person kick all gravel/sand riffles, and the other kick all boulder/cobble riffles). If the stream does not have an adequate amount of riffle/run habitat to collect two full samples, it will be necessary to substitute a replacement at the next stream that does have adequate habitat. If the first site you visit on a list provides enough good habitat to do a duplicate, then sample it as a duplicate. Do not wait until the end of a week or list to sample for a duplicate stream.

During a duplicate, both team members will complete the habitat forms, collect benthic macroinvertebrates, and obtain appropriate physicochemical samples as if they are the only person there. **DO NOT PUT YOUR BENTHIC SAMPLING DATA ON THE OTHER PERSONS FORM!** Water quality sonde and flow readings should be recorded on the DUP 1 assessment form only. GPS coordinates can be shared between the two forms. **Make sure the name of the collector (not both team members) is written on the sample containers as well as a “-Dup 1” or “-Dup 2” at the end of the AN-Code.** If the names of both team members are written on the containers there will be no way of determining the actual collector and thus no way of comparing the results for quality. If for some reason the designated duplicate is not sampleable, the team should replace the duplicate site with another stream in the same week.

D. Reference Sites and Potential Reference Sites

Potential reference sites and established reference sites should be assessed no matter how far the hike unless it appears dangerous or too difficult to do so.

Reference conditions are thought to represent the characteristics of stream reaches that are least disturbed by human activities and are used to define attainable chemical, biological and habitat conditions for a region. The development of reference conditions is a key component of environmental impact evaluations. In most West Virginia streams, historic data were not collected prior to human disturbances and activities. A logical method of determining the health of streams is to compare them to established reference conditions. **Therefore, it is extremely important for sampling teams to conduct assessments on several (as many as possible) undisturbed streams that meet reference conditions.**

The map coordinator will provide each team with a list of potential reference sites and already established reference sites. A considerable amount of time is invested each year in the process of selecting candidate reference sites, conducting field assessments on them, analyzing resultant data, and elevating them to full reference site status. This includes time spent to maintain the reference site database and improve methodologies used to identify them. Candidate reference sites were established by examining GIS land use coverages and marking the stream segments that appear to have the least amount of disturbance. Preference is often given to sites with minimal disturbance such as agriculture and urban land cover. Because the GIS coverages may not be current or complete, many of these candidate sites will not meet reference criteria (**see Reference Site Criteria below**) and, thus, should not be assessed unless otherwise directed on the stream list.

Reference Site Criteria

The following selection criteria are used to determine reference site status after assessments have been conducted and all the chemical, habitat, biological, and reconnaissance information is entered into a database. Each site is evaluated to see if it meets these reference site criteria. If all of the criteria are met, the site is given reference site status.

Note: It will be impossible to utilize all of these criteria while in the field. However, it will be useful to consider these criteria while making decisions on whether to conduct an assessment on a candidate reference site.

*** *Indicates criterion that can be determined in the field.***

1. Point source discharges - Because reference sites presumably represent least disturbed conditions, point source discharges (NPDES) located upstream of an assessment site generally disqualify it from becoming a reference site. WCMS and other GIS coverages provide easy access to the locations of many permitted point sources. However, extra effort is taken in

- the field to ensure that point sources do not exist above the site.*
2. Anthropogenic disturbances within the stream assessment area are evaluated visually. Best professional judgment is employed to make reference site inclusions based on the number and type of disturbance(s). For example, a surface mine site would generally be considered a greater disturbance than an ATV trail and small road combined and could exclude the site from reference condition consideration. However, impacts from the ATV trail and/or road may be considered so minor that they do not exclude the site from reference consideration. The information gathered in the field on anthropogenic disturbance helps validate the GIS coverages used to select the candidate sites (**see Section C. Guidelines for Completing the Stream Assessment Forms; Section C.Part 1, PAGE 2**).
 3. * NPS - Obvious sources of NPS are documented within the assessment area. If sources of NPS are documented for areas above the assessment site, they are also considered. Livestock feedlots, parking lots, and road runoff are common sources of NPS. Best professional judgment is employed to make reference site inclusions based on the type and intensity of the NPS. For example, a livestock feedlot with direct drainage to the stream would likely exclude the site from reference consideration. In contrast, a small road drain may not be significant enough to exclude a site from consideration.
 4. * Primary WQ criteria:
 - a. D.O. ≥ 5.0 mg/l - The criterion for dissolved oxygen was taken from "WV Water Quality Standards" as developed by the State Water Resources Board (SWRB).
 - b. pH between 6.0 and 9.0 Standard Units (S.U.) - The criterion for pH was taken from "WV Water Quality Standards" as developed by the State Water Resources Board (SWRB).
 5. Secondary WQ criteria: (used as flag values)
 - a. * Conductivity < 500 $\mu\text{mhos/cm}$ - Criterion for conductivity was established from analysis of WVDEP data and from best professional judgment of several experienced field employees. A value greater than 500 may indicate the presence of dissolved ions (such as sulfate, chlorides, and metals) exceeding the background levels for the area. It is important to note that a full water quality analysis that includes all possible chemical constituents is not within the resource pool of the program. Consequently, the conductivity reading of a site can be used as a means of flagging the site for further investigation before it can be considered a reference site. Note: Region specific criteria for conductivity are currently being examined to address natural differences in ambient conductivity. This may result in having lower or higher conductivity thresholds based on ecoregion, watershed (8 digit HUC), etc. Currently, best professional judgment is used when conductivity for

a site is conspicuously higher than expected for the area.

- b. Fecal coliform bacteria < 800 colonies/100 ml - The fecal coliform value of 800 colonies/100ml is double the maximum set by the WV Environmental Quality Board (WV EQB) which states that fecal coliform shall not exceed 400/100ml in more than 10 percent of all samples taken during the month. This value was raised to 800/100ml for reference criteria due to the lengthy holding times of fecal samples (24 hours in many cases). Additionally, experienced field personnel have encountered fecal coliform bacteria counts exceeding the standard in streams where no human impacts were apparent or known. Thus, a value of 800/100ml would decrease the possibility of excluding some undisturbed (anthropogenically) streams from reference consideration. Similar to the criterion for conductivity, fecal coliform bacteria can be used as a means of flagging the site for further investigation before it can be considered a reference site.
6. No known violations of state water quality standards – If there is a violation of a water quality criterion standard as established by the (WV EQB), the site is eliminated from reference site consideration. **Note: This does not include fecal coliform bacteria as described above.** Because of their toxicity, metals are the primary consideration when evaluating data for violations.
7. * RBP habitat metric scores: The habitat criteria below are adapted from the US EPA-RBP habitat assessment procedures (*see Section C. Guidelines for Completing the Stream Assessment Forms; Section C.Part 1, PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a-EPA's Rapid Habitat Assessment Form*). These criteria were selected because they are considered most indicative of anthropogenic disturbance.
 - ≥ 11 (lowest score possible for sub-optimal rating) for following:
 - a. epifaunal substrate
 - b. channel alteration
 - c. sediment deposition
 - ≥ 6 (lowest score possible for marginal rating) for following:
 - a. bank vegetative protection (right bank & left bank scored separately)
 - b. riparian vegetative zone width (right bank & left bank scored separately)
 - ≥ 130 (mid-suboptimal score) for total habitat score

A value >10 indicates that stream habitat is at least sub-optimal for that particular parameter. The WAB sampling strategy dictates that many assessments are conducted at or near the mouths of streams. This strategy tends to bias the habitat scores (many sites are roadside accessible or below bridges) and in many cases results in relatively low scores for those parameters that are most indicative of human disturbance. It is for this reason that the minimum values are

set to 11 (7 through 10) and 6 (parameter 11). Otherwise, few streams (if any) would meet the selection criteria.

All sites that meet these criteria can be elevated to what is called a **Level I** reference site as it passed all of the needed criteria. However, it must be understood that absolute pristine habitat conditions do not exist in most areas. Therefore, decisions must be made on what is an acceptable level of disturbance to represent reference condition. Additionally, acceptable conditions may differ among watershed regions because of factors such as local geology, vegetation, and predominant land use. In heavily disturbed watershed regions, undisturbed conditions may not exist. In addition, a large proportion of reference sites currently in the database are on first and second order streams because the potential for anthropogenic disturbance generally increases as stream size increases. Consequently, reference conditions may need to be determined based on the best available conditions. Because of this, it has become necessary to relax the reference criteria to establish a second tier of reference sites called **Level II**. Level II reference sites may meet most of the criteria above, but barely fail to meet a few of the less critical ones.

Determining Candidate Reference Sites While In the Field

Aside from the numeric criteria that can be evaluated while in the field (*i.e.* Water Chemistry and RBP Habitat Scores), determining if a site is a candidate reference site can seem like a daunting task. As one samples more and more in the different regions of the state and becomes familiar with what is the best possible condition for an area, this task becomes easier. It also helps to pay careful attention when sampling a site that is already established as reference quality and try to imprint a visual of the characteristics of that site into one's mind.

Determine human disturbances by reconnaissance and using GIS land use maps. Choose stream segments with no major (or as little as possible) human disturbance, (*i.e.*, eliminate sites with strip mines, refuse piles, towns, major roads, active open fields or agriculture), impoundments, power-lines, non-point sources, etc. **Consult current and historic GIS land use, aerial photos, and topo maps for determination of upstream disturbances.** Some of these disturbances are indicated on topographic maps. If possible choose candidate sites located within a State Park or other static land use type. In most cases, it will be necessary to choose candidate sites with limited accessibility (obviously due to the nature of the condition we are searching for) that requires some long hikes. If passable jeep trails or hiking trails are indicated on the map, try and choose sites within their paths and make the hiking distance as short as possible.

Anthropogenic disturbances within the stream assessment area should be evaluated visually. Best professional judgment is employed to make reference site inclusions based on the number and type of disturbance. For example, a

surface mine site would generally be considered a greater disturbance than an ATV trail and small road combined and would exclude the site from reference condition consideration. However, impacts from the ATV trail and/or road may be considered minor so that they do not exclude the site from reference consideration. In particular, don't immediately eliminate a site as potential reference if it has a small road following along much of its length unless there is obvious erosion or areas of high sediment deposition. Many of our established reference sites do have roads running parallel to them or crossing them at some point(s). Also, consider where you are in the state when deciding on potential reference sites. The northwestern portion of West Virginia (Western Allegheny Plateau – Ecoregion 70) should not be held to the same standard as the eastern mountainous section (Ridge and Valley – Ecoregion 67). In other words, the least disturbed conditions in Ecoregion 70 are not equal to those of Ecoregion 67. For example, some streams in the Upper Ohio South watershed in Ecoregion 70 have hilltop farms that may offer little if any impact to the stream located a down in the valley below. Some of these are established reference sites and represent the best possible conditions for the Ecoregion. In Ecoregion 67, there are many streams without any recent land disturbance (entirely forested). Many of these are established reference sites. A concerted effort should also be made to recognize some candidates on streams with larger watershed areas since the potential for anthropogenic disturbance generally increases as stream size increases.

All potential reference sites and already established reference sites should be reconned by vehicle to provide additional information about the watershed not available thru GIS coverages.

Sampling teams should note that they are by no means limited to the list of potential reference sites provided by the map coordinator. If a potential reference site is encountered while in the field, every effort should be made to conduct a full WAB assessment on that stream segment. If a potential reference site is also designated as a target site, then you should search for a place to sample that will satisfy the potential reference conditions. In other words, if a small disturbance is encountered at or near the mouth of a stream that is not designated potential ref on the stream list, move the site above the disturbance to conduct the assessment.

Always collect “RANDOM SITE” physicochemical parameters at all potential and established reference sites.

Because of the nature of reference sites (undisturbed), traversing to the sample site may require long strenuous hikes over difficult terrain; NOT DANGEROUS TERRAIN! This should not be a reason for eliminating the site for assessment.

If you personally feel it is too difficult (or too far to hike) to get to the site, do not attempt it. Discuss it with other sampling teams who may be willing to give it a try. **DO NOT NAVIGATE TO ANY ASSESSMENT SITE THAT PRESENTS A DANGEROUS SITUATION TO YOU OR ANOTHER TEAM MEMBER!**

Section B. Site Documentation

Part 1. Coordinates and Global Positioning Systems (GPS)

GPS Overview

GPS units use satellite communications to accurately determine the latitude and longitude of a specific location. Since the GPS units use triangulation to determine location, the more satellites it is in contact with, the more accurate the data. To function efficiently the GPS must be used in an unobstructed area and must have good signals with at least four satellites for a reading. In addition, taking a longer time for a reading will generally result in a better reading as sometimes the first four satellites selected are not necessarily the best ones. But one must be careful as sometimes there is often only a brief window where there are enough satellites above at certain sites. It is suggested that you attempt to obtain GPS coordinates first upon arrival at the site and try repeatedly during the duration of the sampling.

The Watershed Assessment Branch uses Garmin brand GPS units because of their ease of use, low cost, and rugged design. However, unlike some other, more expensive GPS units, Garmin GPS units do not store the readings to be differentially corrected at a later date. Recent advances in GPS technology have compensated for this somewhat (e.g., the removal of Selective Availability, WAAS enabled receivers, etc.). To further compensate for this, Watershed Assessment Branch takes great care to QA/QC its coordinate data (**See GPS Quality Assurance/Quality Control below**).

It is standard procedure to take GPS readings at all sites visited. The GPS reading location should be noted on Page 1 of the Habitat Form (**see Section C Section C.Part 1. PAGE 1-Stream Verification**). Specifically, the coordinates should be taken at the location where the water quality parameters and constituents are collected. Should you take coordinates at a location other than the water quality sampling area (e.g., because of poor GPS reception), be sure to thoroughly note this discrepancy on the paperwork and reach map.

Because of the frequency of visitation of some sites, it may not be necessary to take GPS readings during each visit. The table below (**Table 2**) outlines some typical frequency of GPS readings for various sample types.

Table 2. Typical Frequency of GPS Readings for various Watershed Assessment Branch Activities

Sample Type	Frequency of GPS Readings
Wadeable Benthic (Random, Targeted, and associated TMDL visit) and Fish Surveys	Every Visit
Long Term Monitoring Sites	Every Visit
Special Surveys	Every Visit
Lakes & Large Rivers (or other boatable activities)	Every Visit
TMDL	1 st , 2 nd , and Final Visits
Special Projects	1 st , 2 nd , and Final Visits
Ambient Network	Old Sites-Only when the site is moved (e.g., moved us 30 m because of a new bridge) New Sites-1 st and 2 nd visit

In addition, there may be some survey sampling designs that require multiple GPS coordinates for one sampling event because they involve the use of variable reach lengths (e.g., Fish Surveys, Non-Wadeable Stream Surveys, etc.). In such cases it will be necessary to take GPS coordinates at the following locations: the water quality collection location or X-site, the downstream terminus of the reach, and the upstream terminus of the reach. Should the X-site coincide with either the downstream or upstream terminus of the reach, then make a note as such and just collect GPS coordinates for the downstream and upstream terminus of the reach.

Quick Operation of the Garmin III+ or V GPS Unit

Procedures for obtaining coordinates with a GARMIN GPS III+ or V

- A) Unfold the antenna.
- B) Press the red light bulb button to turn unit on.
- C) At the warning screen, press enter to proceed to the satellite screen.
- D) Wait an adequate amount of time while the unit locks onto the satellites. The bars at the bottom of the screen will rise with increasing signal strength and will turn black when the signal is locked for that satellite.
- E) When the unit has locked into enough satellites to get any reading it will display a map.
- F) Push the "quit" button twice to get back to the satellite screen. If the reading is adequate, record the EPE (Ellipsoid Precision Error) or accuracy. This is a number in feet that ranges generally from 15-100 with a lower number being more accurate. Imagine a circle represents your location that is as wide in feet

as the number. The larger the number, the larger the circle and the less sure you are of your exact position. An EPE of 20-30 feet is really good and an EPE of 100 feet is really bad. The unit will also display accuracy by stating if it was in 2-D or 3-D. A 2-D reading is a one with only three satellites available. Therefore, elevation information is not available and your position may be pretty inaccurate on a two dimensional plane. 3-D means that four or more satellites were available and the elevation and your position in three dimensional space is relatively accurate. Be sure to indicate on the habitat form if the reading is in 2-D in addition to the EPE number.

- G) If the EPE is not very good or in 2-D wait some more to see if it improves. If it does not, then proceed with what is available or utilize alternative means to determine coordinates (e.g., GIS, Previous Visit, etc.).
- H) Push the “quit” button until the latitude and longitude are displayed in the lower third of the screen.
- I) Record the latitude and longitude as "field readings" on the habitat sheet

Procedures for checking/changing the datum with a GARMIN GPS III+ or V

Sometimes it may be necessary to check the datum being used by the unit (e.g., when a unit has been without batteries for an extended amount of time or with the purchase of a new unit). Each datum is different and will dictate how the coordinates be displayed or recorded. Since most of our GIS needs in the office are fulfilled through WCMS, we need to make sure that any data taken or recorded in the same datum used by WCMS. The older 2.8 version of WCMS uses NAD 1927 CONUS for a datum. The newer WCMS version (9.x) uses NAD 1983 CONUS. Watershed Assessment transitioned to NAD 1983 as the standard in July 2006.

- A) Unfold the antenna.
- B) Press the red light bulb button to turn unit on. Wait for the “Acquiring Sats” screen to appear.
- C) Press Menu twice to get the Main Menu.
- D) Scroll down to Setup and press ENTER.
- E) Scroll right along the tabs to Position or Location.
 1. Make sure that the Position or Location Format is “hddd⁰ mm’ ss.s”.
 2. If “NAD83 CONUS” or “NAD83” is not displayed under Map Datum, then scroll down and select whatever is listed under Map Datum. This will cause a list to pop up on the left. Scroll down and select “NAD83 CONUS” or “NAD83”; press Enter. The proper datum should now be selected. Press QUIT twice to get back to the “Acquiring Sats” screen and turn off the unit.
 3. If “NAD83 CONUS” or “NAD83” is not displayed under Map Datum, then scroll down and select whatever is listed under Map Datum. This will cause a list to pop up on the left. Scroll down and select “NAD83 CONUS” or “NAD83”; press Enter. The proper datum should now be selected.
- F) Press QUIT twice to get back to the “Acquiring Sats” screen and turn off the unit.

GPS Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Before use, each GPS unit should be examined for proper datum and battery levels and adjustments should be made as required.

The accuracy reading of the GPS coordinates is observed and recorded in the field to help in obtaining the best possible reading as well as indicate if there may have been an issue with the unit's ability to report the correct location.

The location of GPS coordinates are checked and validated by the sampling team immediately after sampling or later during data entry and proofing. The coordinates are plotted on GIS topo map and aerial photo coverages and then compared to the field documentation notes (*e.g.*, hand drawn site map, directions to the site, site descriptions, accuracy reading, etc.). Those coordinates that do not fall within a reasonable distance of the expected location are more extensively cross checked and researched. Any position that does not meet these expectations is recalculated by using the field documentation notes about the site to approximate the site location and using the Watershed Characterization and Modeling System ArcGIS extension to generate coordinates for that location.

Stations or sites that are visited more than once (*e.g.*, TMDL sampling, special projects, etc.) will have multiple GIS coordinates obtained to help reassure that the coordinates do indeed match the sampling location.

In addition, spatial GIS queries are used to filter out potential "bad" coordinates. These bad coordinates are double checked and either corrected by using field documentation notes about the site (*i.e.*, site map, directions to site, and location description) to or documented as to why they appear "bad".

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the use and collection of GPS coordinates is included. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in using GPS units will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results before they are allowed to collect coordinates solo. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Part 2. Photographic Documentation

Photography Overview

The Watershed Assessment Branch needs quality photographs from every site to use as illustrations for our reports, presentations, and for general use. They are vital for illustration and clarification of the ideas presented as well as visual relief from all the words in the text. To achieve this we need the field personnel to take a variety of pictures while they are in the field. Along with the pictures we need a way to keep track of these photos on our field forms as well as in our database.

This “photography log” is essential for four reasons:

1. We need to know who took the picture
2. We need to know where the picture was taken
3. We need to know what the picture is of
4. We need to know what to call the photo

For information about how to take a photograph with a particular camera, use various features, and download the photos to a computer, consult the operation manual with the camera.

Procedures for In the Field

Don't hesitate to take more than one picture of the same scene or activity. Even pictures taken at non-target or dry sites are considered useful and valuable.

Also feel free to experiment by varying the picture by using the settings feature on the camera (e.g., flash level, aperture speed, exposure, wide angle/telephoto, etc.). Always use the highest image size setting on the camera. This will take up more space, but it will provide us with the most useable pictures.

Obviously all pictures will not be used in the report for the watershed where they were taken. Or any other report for that matter. But they may be used later in a presentation, brochure, or report we haven't thought of yet. In addition, these photos may be valuable for the 303(d) narrative criteria listings, 303(b) assessments, or TMDL process (e.g., clarify and extent of hydroxides in stream). We cannot have too many pictures to choose from.

We need pictures of such items as:

- ◆ Stream alteration or management practices
- ◆ Stream disturbances
- ◆ Waterfowl or other wildlife in or near streams
- ◆ Silt laden streams flowing into clear streams

- ◆ Scenic Views
- ◆ Field crews at work
- ◆ Distinctive views of streams, buildings along streams, industry along streams, dams, boats or barges or other water related pictures.
- ◆ Pollution sources and features (e.g., point and non-point sources, metal hydroxides, poorly constructed roads, feedlots, etc.)

All pertinent information about a photo should be recorded on the field sheet under the photography log section (*see Chapter II. Section C. Part 1. PAGE 10-Photography Log*). This information includes:

Camera Type: The type of camera used (e.g., Canon, Olympus, or Sony).

Camera Number: The assigned number of the camera used. This is usually marked on the camera with a black sharpie. **Do not confuse this with the jeep number often marked on the camera in white ink.** If for some reason the camera's instrument identification number is not apparent, then write down the Manufacture's Serial Number on the instrument so that the proper identification number can be tracked down later and remarked onto the camera. **This is required for all photos taken!**

Disk-Photo #: Each camera assigns these unique file names to photos in series from 0-99999 in a format associated with some letters (e.g., a photo will have a file name of DSV-00456). Write down the number portion of the file name on the form. **Do not confuse this number with the photo count numbers on the cameras that indicate how many photos have been taken or can be taken, which reset once photos are removed or deleted from the camera.** In addition, it is important to note that how the photos are removed from the camera may change this file name.

Stream Name: The name of the stream featured in the photo. **This is only required if the photo was not taken at a sample site.**

AN-Code: The AN-Code (if known) of the stream featured in the photo. **This is only required if the photo was not taken at a sample site.**

Photo Description: A description of the photo as it relates to the stream (e.g., looking upstream from X-site) and the features that may be found in the photo (e.g., AMD, eroded bank, channelization, an optimal score for bank vegetative protection, a poor score for sediment deposition, etc.). **This is required for all photos taken!**

Date: The date the photo was taken. **This is only required if the photo was not taken on the same date as the sample or if it is not at a sample site.**

Photographer: The person who took the photo. **This is required for all photos taken!**

Sample ID: The designation for that sample and will tie the photo to the other information on the form. This field is filled out when the data is entered into the database. If a photo was not taken at a sample site, a "0" should be put in this box to help note those photos that are not from that sample site.

Procedures for In the Office

Tagging the Photos with a Photo ID

In order to keep track of so many photos, at the end of each sampling week each team will need to tag each photo with a unique photo ID number that is maintained in the database. The following are the steps required for to not only tag each photo with this photo ID, but also ensure that each photo ID will have a description in the database as well.

Photos that are taken at sampling sites

Most of the photographs that we take are of this type and require the least amount of time to prepare for the database.

- A. Open the WABbase.
- B. Select the Form called "Photo ID Form".
- C. In the top or bottom tool bars, press the "new record" button (It looks like a triangle pointing to the right followed by a star).
- D. Check the box called "Used Number". Once this button is pressed, a number will appear in the box called Assigned Photo ID. These are the only two fields that should have data in them.
- E. Rename the photo using this number as the name (e.g., 136.jpg, 456.jpg, etc.)
- F. On your field sheet, write this number under Photo ID on the line where your photo information is recorded.
- G. Go to step C above and repeat for more photos or close the database if done.
- H. Copy/Cut/or Move all of the photos from your computer onto the network server at the following directory:
 Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\Photos\Coded Photos
- I. If a message appears asking if you want to replace a file, press no. If this happens, then someone has already named a photo by that name and the two photo names (yours and the one already on the server) need to be investigated and resolved.

All of the information on your field sheet will be entered in during the data entry process and can be linked to your photo by the photo ID. The data entry person will write the appropriate sample ID next to each photo taken at that site.

Photos that are not taken at sampling sites

Only a handful of photos that we take are of this type. Since they will not be tied into a Sample ID all data entry for these photos is the responsibility of those who took the pictures.

- A. Open the WABbase.
- B. Select the Form called "Photo ID Form"

- C. In the top or bottom tool bars, press the “new record” button (It looks like a triangle pointing to the right followed by a star).
- D. Check the box called “Used Number”. Once this button is pressed, a number will appear in the box called Assigned Photo ID.
- E. Rename the photo using this number as the name (e.g., 136.jpg, 456.jpg, etc.).
- F. Reenter the photo ID number in the box called “Photo ID”.
- G. Begin entering the data in the boxes below the Photo ID (*i.e.*, Photo Description, Photographer, Camera Type, and Camera Number).
- H. Enter the applicable site information in the green box (*i.e.*, Stream Name, AN-Code, Mile Point, Descriptor, Date, Watershed, Latitude and Longitude).
- I. In the bottom of the green box, enter a 0 for the Sample ID only. **Do not enter any information in the red box!**
- J. Go to step C above and repeat for more photos or close the database if done.
- K. Copy/Cut/or Move all of the photos from your computer onto the network server at the following directory:
Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\Photos\Coded Photos
- L. If a message appears asking if you want to replace a file, press no. If this happens, then someone has already named a photo by that name and the two photo names (yours and the one already on the server) need to be investigated and resolved.

Again, because these photos are not taken at a site, they will not be entered during the data entry process and assigned a Sample ID. The only way the information about these sites will be entered is if the crew who took them enters the data. And a photo without this information is not very useful.

Photography Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Before use, each camera should be examined for proper date, resolution settings, and battery levels and adjustments should be made as required.

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the use and collection of photos is included. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in using taking photos will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Section C. Guidelines for Completing the Stream Assessment Forms

What is presented here explains what is found on the Wadeable Benthic Stream Assessment Form and its appendices. Other forms (*i.e.*, TMDL-Initial Visit, TMDL-Secondary Visit, TMDL-Final Visit, TMDL-Source, and General WQ) will contain some, but not all of the following. Nevertheless, the instructions on how to fill out the sections are the same as present here unless otherwise stated.

Part 1. Description of Wadeable Benthic Stream Assessment Form

The quality and quantity of habitat is a major determinant of aquatic community potential. Consequently, a thorough habitat characterization is essential for proper interpretation of biological (benthic macroinvertebrate, periphyton, & fish) assessment results.

Important Note

If a stream is considered “not target” (*e.g.*, dry or too deep), Page 1 of this form must be completed. Also take photographs of the stream that display the reason why it was not considered target.

If water quality only is collected, you must complete pages 1-4, 8 and 10, as best as you can and take plenty of photographs as well.

Front Side of All Pages

REVIEWERS INITIALS: All habitat forms must be reviewed and initialed for completeness by a second crew member. This review must be performed on-site. The Biomorph should point out any omissions to his/her partner and initial the page when all the data are complete. In the case of duplicate sites, this is an opportunity for each field worker to discuss discrepancies between the forms. However, all results should be considered final and should not be changed to match the other person’s results.

AN-CODE: It is extremely important that the **correct** AN-Code be recorded on each sheet as this is one way to link all the sheets for a sample together if accidentally separated. **See PAGE 1-Stream Verification below for more details about AN-Codes.**

Date: Use mm/dd/yyyy format: *e.g.*, 04/29/1999. It is extremely important that the date be recorded on each sheet as this is another way to link all the sheets for a sample together if accidentally separated.

PAGE 1***Stream Verification***

Stream Name and Location Description: Make sure the stream name on the map corresponds with the assigned AN-Code from your printed stream list. If they do not match, make a note of it on the habitat sheet and printed list. Include a detailed description of the location such as: Greenbrier River US (abbreviation for Upstream) of Big Run at Hilldale Bridge, New River DS (abbreviation for Downstream) Lick Run at Glen Lynn, Red Creek Between Oak Run and Pine Run at Laneville, Piney Creek Upstream Beckley PSD 50m, Pinnacle Creek DS right UNT 0.5 miles south of Pineville, Bear Run near mouth south of Sanoma Upstream first bridge, Camp Creek at mouth in Camp Creek St. Forest at Campsite #2, etc. Be sure to include the receiving stream in the name of any source discharges (e.g., Beckley PSD outfall discharging into Piney Creek US of Smock Run).

AN-Code: It is extremely important that the **correct** AN-Code (Alpha-Numeric Code) be recorded for each stream site. Mistakes in translation from the printed stream list to the habitat sheet must be avoided. Mistakes in this step create mass confusion and plenty of extra work during data entry. All streams will have an AN-Code with the mileage designated between brackets (e.g., - {3.6}). If you are going to sample at a location other than those listed, create a unique AN-Code such as KG-3-#{#1}. The mileage can be assigned to this AN-Code later using the WCMS (Watershed Characterization and Modeling System) GIS model by the field personnel or the map coordinator.

Date: Use mm/dd/yyyy format: e.g., 04/29/66

Time: Use military time. e.g., 1315

Geomorph: Initials of the team member completing the habitat form.

Biomorph: Initials of the team member collecting benthic macroinvertebrate, periphyton and water samples.

Basin: e.g., Upper Kanawha, West Fork, Lower New

County: e.g., Hardy, WV

Quad: Enter the topographic quadrangle name, e.g., Cass, Mt. Nebo, and Panther

GPS Type: If a Garmin unit is being used, record the word **Garmin**. If GIS software is used to determine the coordinates, indicate **GIS** on the form. If coordinates from a

previous visit are being used, indicate **Previous Visit** on the form. If coordinates from a subsequent visit are being used, indicate **Subsequent Visit** on the form.

EPE: Record from the Garmin GPS after the XY's or coordinates have been recorded.

Random #: EPA Probabilistic (Random) sites are designated by a special number. This number (which will be on the stream list or topo map) is entered here.

XY's Proofed: The type of basemaps used as a reference when the coordinates were cross-checked in GIS to ensure their location is accurate to what was indicated in the directions, hand-drawn map, and location descriptions. Common answers would be the use of the **24k-DRG** (24k topo GIS coverage), or **03-DOQs** and **96-DOQs** (2003 and 1996 vintage aerial photos). **See Section B.Part 1-GPS Quality Assurance/Quality Control** Coordinates and Global Positioning Systems (GPS)**for more information about proofing coordinates.** This step is usually done in the office by an experienced GIS person.

By: The person that double-checks the coordinates for accuracy in the office

EPA or Corrected Latitude and Longitude at X-site: Either the coordinates provided on the stream list for EPA Probabilistic sites (randoms) are recorded here or corrected versions of the coordinates are recorded here in the office after they were proofed in the office (see **XY's Proofed** above).

Field Latitude and Longitude: Enter for all sites after obtaining readings in the field using Garmin or Trimble GPS units (**see Chapter II.Section B.Part 1-Coordinates and Global Positioning Systems (GPS)**)

X-site Field Verified?: Answer appropriately. **YES** or **NO**. This must be answered at all sites.

If no, why?: Sometimes it is possible a stream site will not be physically visited. This may be due to one of two things: Landowner access denial or a physical barrier. Landowner denial could come in the form of a verbal denial, which is absolute, or in the form of implied denial. Implied denial simply means that the crew has seen evidence that the property owner would not be agreeable to our presence in the stream and used best professional judgment to not sample the site. This evidence can come in the form of an abundance of posted signs (e.g., at every fence post), by conversation context talking to a neighbor (e.g., "He likes to shoot at trespassers."), heavily fenced and secured areas, or simply a private property (e.g., the site is located in the back yard of a secluded cabin). Physical Barriers are those that may be temporary (e.g., a water flooded road) or permanent (e.g., high cliffs). Physical barriers are not gated roads or fences as these are better classified as types of landowner denial.

Is site target and kick sampleable?: Answer appropriately. **YES** or **NO**. **THIS MUST BE ANSWERED EVEN IF THE SITE WAS NOT SEEN OR PHYSICALLY VISITED BY THE FIELD CREW!!! AN EDUCATED GUESS OUT IN THE FIELD IS FAR BETTER THAN A WILD ONE MADE IN THE OFFICE!**

If no, why?: Sometimes a stream site will not be sampled for one reason or another. The following are possible reasons:

- **Low Flow-Permanent** (non-drought, i.e., subsidence) or **Low Flow-Temporary** (drought)
- **Ephemeral**
- **Too Deep-Permanent** (e.g., a larger stream or river that has a riffle/run habitat that is flowing but always will be over the net) or **Too Deep-Temporary** (e.g., a smaller stream that is over the net at that time possibly due to recent rainfall, but would potentially be at base flow at another time)
- **No Riffle/Run** habitat present (i.e., MACS type habitat)
- **Wetland** (stream is dominated by cattails and has no real channel)
- **Filled** by one of the following: Mining (valley fills, reclaimed concrete channels), Farm (stream plowed under for farm land), Urban/Residential (stream is culverted to make room for houses/yards/residential roads/airports), Road (stream is culverted for a major road like and interstate or 4 lane expressway), or Industry (landfills, fly ash dumps)
- **Impounded** by one of the following: Lake (recreational lakes or reservoirs), Mining (sediment or treatment ponds), Farm (farm ponds), Beavers (stream is impounded by beaver dams and activities), Navigation (stream is inundated by the backwaters of a river with locks and dams used for barge navigation), or Industry (landfill treatment ponds)
- **No Stream Present (Map Error)** (this is extremely rare and has only truly occurred one time)
- And **Other**. If other reasons arise, please comment in sketch area on page 1 when appropriate.

ALWAYS FILL OUT THE FIRST PAGE OF THE HABITAT ASSESSMENT FORM, GET COORDINATES OF THE SITE, AND TAKE PHOTOGRAPHS, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER ANY TYPE OF SAMPLING WAS CONDUCTED (EVEN IF STREAM IS DRY, IMPOUNDED, OR INACCESSIBLE)! THIS IS IMPORTANT INFORMATION AND ASSISTS IN DATABASE MANAGEMENT.

Detailed notes on verification, access, and sampleability of site: Notes concerning the above four items and the process that led to the answers above.

Sampled?: Answer appropriately. **YES** or **NO**. This must be answered. In some instances you may be sampling some aspect (e.g., WQ only) even if the site is declared to be non-target.

Sample Type: Indicate which of the data types were collected (1) **YSI** (represents any type of water quality sonde), (2) **Lab Water**, (3) **Fecal**, (4) **Habitat** (i.e., RBP Habitat), (5) **Bugs**, (6) **Periphyton**, (7) **Fish**, (8) **Flow**, (9) **BE/CP** (i.e., the Stream Bank Erodibility Factors/Estimated Channel Profile Form). **Do not include Hydrolab/YSI sonde readings as part of the lab water data. This refers to laboratory-analyzed samples only.**

⇒ **Note: Other forms may have specific lab water suites as options (e.g., AMD, Acid Rain, Nutrients, Orthophosphate, etc.). Please fill out accordingly.**

Dup Type: If the site is assessed by each team member independently, the site is a duplicate site. **These sites should be treated as if each person was the only person assessing the site.** Indicate the type of duplicate it is 1) **None**, 2) **Lab Water**, 3) **Fecal**, 4) **Habitat**, 5) **Bugs**, 6) **Periphyton**. Water quality sonde readings should be recorded on the DUP 1 assessment form only. GPS coordinates can be shared. Make sure all sample containers are labeled with the person's name that made the collection, not both team members. This allows for tracking potential sampling errors resulting from poor technique or improper training.

Duplicate #: The number designation of the duplicate sample, that is, Dup **#1** or Dup **#2**.

Was site moved (non-random)?: Used mainly for Non-Random sites. However, it could be used to indicate if a random site's reach was slid around the x-site (**see Chapter II. Section A. Part 2-Sliding the Reach**). Answer **YES** or **NO**.

Explanation?: Explain why the site was moved and where the site was moved to. This may apply to random sites where sliding the reach is necessary. It can also apply to other sites that might be moved upstream or downstream from the point marked in order to obtain riffle/run habitat, etc. **If the site is moved, it is important to identify and mark the location of the new assessment site on a topo map with date and initials of team and fill out a form for both sites.**

Directions to Stream Site: Give a detailed description on how the stream site was accessed. Include highway names & numbers, distances from prominent landmarks (manmade and/or natural), proximity to towns, etc. Indicate if contact with landowner/stakeholder/groundskeepers, etc., are necessary and note where, when, and why they should be contacted. Addresses of and other specifics about the

landowner/stakeholder/groundskeepers can be written down on page 8 under the section called Landowner/Stakeholder Information.

Bird's-eye-view Sketch of 100 meter Stream Assessment Area and General Comments:

Provide a detailed sketch of the area and include stream flow direction, stream morphology (*i.e.*, riffles, runs, pools, bends, falls, large boulders, erosion scars), land use on left and right bank, upstream activities (if possible), proximity to permanent land marks, indicate direction by drawing a North arrow (↑), and any observations which may provide pertinent information to the assessment and location of the stream area. Indicate where GPS coordinates are collected by marking the spot in the stream with an (X). **Coordinates should be obtained at the “EPA provided” latitude and longitude for random sites (usually downstream terminus). Coordinates should be obtained at the downstream terminus at all other sites if possible.** Indicate direction of flow with an arrow (↑). Mark the areas where benthic macroinvertebrates (b) and periphyton (p) are collected, and mark water sample collection areas with a (wq). Indicate the location of the preceding descriptive drawings within the 100 m assessment area and provide visual estimates of distance (try drawing it to scale). Indicate the upper end of the reach with an “us” and the downstream end with “ds” and attempt to correlate these with permanent landmarks. **Keep in mind that a different field crew may be revisiting the site in 5 years and will rely heavily on your description/drawing to get back to the same location. In other instances, it may be necessary to determine the location using GIS programs.** General comments can be very important when interpreting sample data. Therefore, any anomalies or outstanding attributes should be noted. If it is a random site and sliding the reach was necessary, indicate on the map the changes that were made and place an X in the drawing of the reach to indicate the X-site location.

- ⇒ **Note: Other forms (e.g., TMDL, General WQ) are more concerned with the more general area of the stream site and not necessarily concentrating on the 100m assessment reach.**
- ⇒ **The information generated from drawing a stream map should help one keep track of various features and more accurately fill out other portions of the form (e.g., the Total Habitat Type % Coverage for Reach, Riparian Intensities, RBP metrics etc).**

Notes: General notes about the sample or sample location (e.g., the site is on a 303(d) listed stream, this site is taken at a previously sampled Gray WVSCI site, etc.). Additional personnel and their role or capacity in which they worked on the site can be documented here.

PAGE 2

Site Activities and Disturbances (Including Roads)

The information obtained from these measurements will aid in providing insight as to what organisms may be present or are expected to be present, and the presence of stream impacts. This information is also invaluable when conducting 305(b) assessments of streams and when analyzing the random data.

Local Watershed Erosion: In the 100 m reach, note the **existing or potential** detachment of soil within the local watershed (that portion of the watershed that drains directly into the stream upstream of the sample point) and its movement into the stream. Indicate whether there is **None** or if erosion is **Slight**, **Moderate**, or **Heavy**. Look for roads, drains, tilled ground, hillside slips, staging areas, etc. **Do not confine your observations to the local stream banks in the reach.** If observations are made outside of the upstream or downstream terminus of the 100 m reach, record them in the large “Comments Box” on the bottom left of the page.

Recent Stream Scouring: In the 100 m reach, note the **existing or potential** scouring of the substrate from recent high flow events and mark as **None**, **Slight**, **Moderate**, or **Heavy**. Look for scoured or abraded substrate particles or the absence of periphyton in seemingly ok streams. Confer with the Biomorph after the first kick to determine if the benthos seems normal. Also consider other streams visited in the area. Information from locals can also be invaluable. If the stream does appear to be moderately or heavily scoured, confer with other crews or the office to determine if benthic sampling should continue or be postponed at the site.

Atmospheric Odors: Rate the any atmospheric odors based on the following scale: **0-None**, **1-Low**, **2-Moderate**, **3-High**, **4-Extreme**, or **NR-Not Rated**.

Odor Description: Describe the nature of the odor. Examples include sulfates, creosote, manure, sewage, septic, dead animals, soap, etc.

Local NPS Pollution: Refers to problems and potential problems **other than siltation/sedimentation** in the 100 m reach. Non-point source pollution is typically defined as runoff from broad landscapes such as agricultural lands and urban areas (e.g., shopping center parking lots). However, we are more concerned with the **regulatory definition of Nonpoint-source pollution** which includes any pollution that is not regulated thru a permitting process or permitted outfall (*i.e.*, pipes that aren't required to have a permit number posted near it). This would include the typical NPS types as well as others that may affect water quality are feedlots, artificial wetlands, septic systems, dams and impoundments, oily strips in center of roads, mine seepage and pre-law mine portals, gob-pile runoff, quarry runoff, landfill leachate, wood-yard

runoff and leachate, acid deposition, etc. Indicate **None**, **Potential**, or **Obvious** sources.

If obvious, magnitude?: If the Nonpoint-Source Pollution is obvious, indicate how intense it is by checking **Slight**, **Moderate**, or **Heavy**.

Specify Obvious or Potential Sources of NPS (feedlot, etc.): Indicate the obvious or potential source of NPS that you observed in the 100 m reach. If it is located above the assessment reach, describe it in the large “Comments Box” on the bottom left of the page.

Point Source Discharges: Since Non-Point source pollution is covering the **regulatory definition of Nonpoint-source pollution**, Point Source (PS) pollution includes any pollution that is regulated thru a permitting process or permitted outfall (*i.e.*, the pipe should have a permit number posted near it). Indicate the presence any permitted discharges entering the streams within the 100 m reach? Indicate **Yes** or **No**.

Pt. Source(s): If there is a point source or sources located in the assessment reach describe it here. If it is located above the assessment reach, describe it in the large “Comments Box” on the bottom left of the page.

⇒ **If you are unsure about if it is NPS and PS, describe it thoroughly in the large “Comments Box” on the bottom left of the page.**

Stream Assessment Area Activities & Disturbances: Rate the intensity of any of the following disturbances that were observed in the 100 m stream assessment area in the corresponding box. The intensity scale is as follows: **1-Low**, **2-Moderate**, **3-High**, and **4-Extreme** and is exclusive of any other stream reach activity (*i.e.*, a 4-extreme rating for Foot Trails does not equal a 4-extreme rating for a parking lot). If the disturbance type was not observed, leave the box blank. Please be careful to consider if the activity listed is actually impacting the stream reach. For example, a road or house may be adjacent to a stream site, but actually drain into the stream upstream or downstream of the site. Additionally, a house ½ mile up on a ridge line separated by forest from the stream will not have any impact on the stream even though you know it is up there. If one of the disturbances is observed above or immediately below the 100 m reach or needs further explanation, record it in the large “**Elaborate on any of the Stream Reach Activities & Disturbances checked above. Which of the above is the greatest detriment to the stream?**” box mid-page on the left side.

The Stream Assessment Area Activities & Disturbances section of the form is divided into the following major categories:

RESIDENTIAL: Note the presence of any of the listed residential disturbances adjacent to or near the stream.

RECREATIONAL: Record the presence of organized public or private parks, campgrounds, beaches, or other recreation areas around the stream assessment area. Look for evidence of informal areas of camping, swimming, or boating around the stream (e.g., swimming hole).

AGRICULTURAL: Note the presence of cropland, pasture, orchards, poultry, and/or livestock. Small gardens should be included in this category as row crops and rated according to its size and activities (i.e., pesticide applications).

INDUSTRIAL: Record any industrial activity (e.g., chemical, pulp), commercial activity (stores, businesses) or logging/mining activities around the stream assessment area. This includes high-tension power lines. Businesses like Wal-Mart and strip malls should be considered as parking lots.

MANAGEMENT: Note any evidence of liming activity, water treatment, dredging or channelization, flow control structures, etc.

ROADS/TRANSPORTATION: The **RESIDENTIAL**, **RECREATIONAL**, **AGRICULTURAL**, and **INDUSTRIAL** categories each have a block for documenting the presence of roads. Roads under these categories have specialized uses. For example, residential driveways, access roads to fishing sites (recreational), farm roads (agricultural), or mine haul roads (industrial). State and county maintained highways are usually roads that serve numerous purposes. If you cannot determine what the specific use of a road is this category will mostly likely best apply. It may also be helpful later on to write down a description of the road (e.g., haul-road, I-77, C.R. 52/3) under the box called Road Notes.

Using the key on the right side of the page under “Multipurpose State or County Maintained Roads”, indicate the width and surface type of the road.

Width: Record the road size as **A=Single**, **B=Double**, or **C=Multi-Lane**.

Use best professional judgment to judge the size of roads. If you think two cars can pass one another without steering onto the shoulder, designate the road as double lane. A single lane would require steering onto the shoulder to pass one another. Multi-lanes are large roads such as Interstate highways and some U.S. routes. Large industrial roads such as the ones built on strip mine operations may also be considered multi-lane.

Surface Type: Record the road type as **A=Dirt**, **B=Rutted Dirt**, **C=Applied Limestone**, **D=Applied Non-Limestone** (e.g., some roads

use red dog-a type of coal refuse as a surface), **E=Asphalt**, or **F=Concrete**.

Elaborate on any of the Stream Reach Activities & Disturbances checked above. Which of the above is the greatest detriment to the stream?: This area is provided for notes about any of the Stream Assessment Area Activities & Disturbances checked above.

Comments Box: “If known, what is the predominant land use(s) in this stream’s drainage? Is it mostly forested, agriculture, mining, logging, houses, urban? If mining present, is it active or abandoned, deep or strip, valley fills, etc. What is the predominant NPS pollution? Are there point sources above the reach? Indicate if you used maps (GIS) or field verified comments. **DO NOT LEAVE THIS BOX BLANK!**”

⇒ **Note: This area is a good place to put comments about the land use observed from recon trips or gleaned from the GIS land use or topo maps. If comments are based on the map, note them as such. Landowner comments about the upstream activities should also go here. The source of each bit of information should also be noted (e.g., GIS, Topo, Recon, or Local or Landowner).**

PAGE 3

Physical Characterization

Average Stream Width (m): Measure the wetted width of the stream at three transects representative of the 100 m assessment area. In general, the three measurements should be made at the downstream terminus, middle, and upstream terminus of the 100 m assessment area. These measurements will be used to calculate (40 x average width) the reach length for sites with substrate characterization (pebble counts) scheduled. Streams greater than 30 m in width will require a visual estimate at three points following the above protocols (if stream conditions permit, try to get one actual reading). Record the measurements and calculate the average stream width (for pebble counts only). The **Geomorph** will take the measurements while establishing the 100 m assessment area (Note: do not walk in stream or take stream measurements until physicochemical data has been collected). A tape measure or measuring stick (thalweg pole) is provided for taking the measurements. The **Geomorph** must conduct this part of the assessment. The gathering of this information is important for several reasons. First, it provides data that is necessary to classify streams by size. Additionally, it requires the Geomorph to cover the entire 100 m reach that will allow for increased accuracy and consistency in the assessment of habitat.

Total Habitat Type % Coverage for Reach: Estimate the percent coverage of each habitat type (**Riffle**, **Run**, & **Pool**) for the 100m reach. **When considering the Pool coverage, remember to count biologically functional pools in smaller streams**

(i.e., do not use the <0.5 m cutoff used in the deep flow regimes in the RBP). *This parameter is best evaluated after completing the Dominant Substrate Type and Reach Characterization below.*

Sediment Characterization

Sediment Odors: Disturb the sediment and note any odors described (**Normal**, **Sewage**, **Chemical**, **Petroleum**, **Anaerobic (Septic)**, or **Other**) which are associated with sediment in the area of the sampling station. Examine depositional areas for this parameter and collaborate with the Biomorph in making the decision.

Sediment “Oils”: Disturb the sediment and choose the term (**Absent**, **Slight**, **Moderate**, or **Profuse**) that best describes the relative amount of sediment oils observed in the stream sampling area. Examine depositional areas and collaborate with the Biomorph before making the decision. **It should be noted that Manganese will often form sheens on the surface of waters and in the sediment that can resemble oil, and thus why this category has oils in quotation marks.**

Sediment Deposits: Note the deposits described (or include any other deposits not listed) which are present in the sampling area. Collaborate with the Biomorph before making the decision. Rate each sediment deposit as **0-None**, **1- Low**, **2- Moderate**, **3-High**, **4-Extreme**, and **NR-Not Rated** (used if for some reason the substrate cannot be seen like when visiting a TMDL site during high turbidity events). Rate the intensities of the each type of metal hydroxide (Iron=Orange/Yellow/Red), Aluminum=White, Manganese=Black). Also indicate the probable source of any metal hydroxide as either **Natural** or **Mining** related. If the probable source it is not known, do not guess natural. If both seem likely, just select Mining as this is often the most detrimental to the stream. **Also note that the Limestone Chunks and Fines should include any non-native limestone (e.g., road gravel, rip-rap, etc.) that is found in the stream.**

Sediment Notes & Comments: Provided as a space to describe unusual substrates or qualities of the substrate. Use this area to elaborate on metal hydroxide sources, limestone chunks and fines sources, trash like bricks, concrete, or asphalt chunks that are serving as benthic substrate.

Substrate Particle Layer Profile

Find a riffle habitat, if available, near the X-site as this is the preferred habitat for this measurement. Document the habitat type (Riffle, Run, and Pool) of the measurement. Choose a location along the cross-section (Right, Middle, or Left facing downstream) that is convenient and will be consistently available for measurement in future visits during all possible flow regimes. It is preferred that this is the Middle if possible. This

exact location is to be kept consistent for each consecutive visit if at all possible. An example of an instance where the same location may not be available for a sample would be a high flow that prevents measurement in the same location as prior visits. If you do need to move to an alternate location, be sure that you are still within the normal stream channel (look for a lack of vegetation). If high flows keep you on the bank, do not take this measurement. Next, begin to remove and document the substrate (**using the Substrate Size Classification outlined in Table 3 below**) one layer at a time. If any sand or silt is documented, record the depth of that layer in cm. **Note: Do not document two layers of sand or silt in succession (e.g., Layer 1=SA-Sand, Layer 2=SA-Sand). Instead, document the thickness of these layers.** Repeat this until the top five layers are documented or until you reach the bottom of the biologically inhabitable zone (no more than 5-10 cm). Record any notes that may be necessary. **Note: The purpose of this evaluation is to document the colonization potential of the substrate relative to sedimentation. Therefore it is important to include Metal Hydroxides in the layer profile as they may have a smothering/cementing effect on the stream substrate in some situations. In addition, it is essential that the habitat, location, and silt/sand layer depths be recorded in order to calculate the final Substrate Layer Profile Score.**

Table 3. Substrate Size Classification for Substrate Layer Profile and Dominant Substrate Type and Reach Characterization

Class	Code	Size	Description
Bedrock	BR	>4000 mm	Bigger than car
Boulder	BL	>250-4000 mm	Basketball to car
Cobble	CB	>64-250 mm	Tennis ball to Basketball
Coarse Gravel	CG	>16-64 mm	Marble to Tennis ball
Fine Gravel	FG	>2-16 mm	Ladybug to marble
Sand	SA	>0.06-2 mm	Gritty between fingers
Silt & Fines	ST	<0.06 mm	Smooth, not gritty (silt & muck)
Clay	CL	>4000 mm	Slick/ hard clay or hard-pan clay bottom
Metal Hydroxides	MH		Any Metal Hydroxide Deposit (Use this class only in the Substrate Layer Profile)

Dominant Substrate Type and Reach Characterization

At various points along the stream reach where there is a sudden change in habitat type, substrate type, or depth, measure the stream depth (m) using the thalweg pole and document the position (relative to the downstream end of the reach) along the stream reach in meters, the habitat type (riffle, run, or pool), the 1st dominant substrate type (**using the Substrate Size Classification outlined in Table 3 above**) and its percent aerial coverage (what you see on top in your “cone of vision”), and then the 2nd dominant substrate type and percent aerial coverage. Take measurements throughout the reach (Geomorph responsibility). Some streams sites may not have all of the three habitat types (usually pools are missing). **When considering the Pool areas, remember to count biologically functional pools in smaller streams (i.e., do not**

use the <0.5m deep flow regime cutoff used in the RBP). **Note: Do not use Metal Hydroxides as a class when evaluating the dominant substrate type; look only at the functional size classes (i.e., those that have size ranges).**

⇒ **Note: The information generated from this task should help one more accurately fill out other portions of the form (e.g., the Total Habitat Type % Coverage for Reach, Sediment Deposit Intensities, and the EPA's Rapid Habitat Assessment Form parameters Epifaunal Substrate, Sediment Deposition, and Riffle Frequency).**

PAGE 4

Field Water Quality Measures

WQ Sample Location: Indicate the cross-sectional location of the water quality sampling: 1) **Mid-Stream**, 2) **Left Bank**, 3) **Right Bank**, 4) **Thalweg**, 5) **Left Channel**, 6) **Right Channel**, 7) **Vertical** (i.e., vertical profiles done on lakes or rivers where samples are taken at multiple depths), 8) **Cross Section-Lateral** (i.e., samples are taken across a stream channel at Left Bank, Mid-Stream, and Right Bank or specific measured distances), 9) **Cross Section-Longitudinal** (i.e., samples are taken along the distance of a stream reach at specific measured distances), 10) **Other** (please describe).

WQ Type: Indicate type of water quality sampling: 1) **Single** (i.e., a single sample is taken at one of the first six WQ Sample Locations mentioned above), 2) **Profile** (i.e., samples are taken at multiple locations, but kept separate as distinct samples), 3) **Composite** (i.e., samples are taken at multiple locations, but combined into one sample), 4) **Other** (please describe).

Sonde Method: Indicate the type of collection method used with the water quality sonde: 1) **Grab** (i.e., direct stream or water column measurement), 2) **Bucket with Crane**, 3) **Van-Dorn Bottle**, 4) **Sample Tube with Rope**, 5) **Bucket with Rope**, 6) **Deployable**, 7) **Other** (please describe).

Lab Water Method: Indicate the type of collection method used to obtain the lab water: 1) **Grab** (i.e., direct stream or water column measurement), 2) **Bucket with Crane**, 3) **Van-Dorn Bottle**, 4) **Sample Tube with Rope**, 5) **Bucket with Rope**, 6) **Clean Hands** (e.g., Mercury sampling), 7) **Other** (please describe).

Flag: Indicate if one of the recorded values was not accurate or suspected of being in error. This field may also be marked in by the data entry person (in pen) if they suspect inaccuracy of the instrument readings. **Examples of Flag Codes used in the fields are in Table 4 below.**

Table 4. Examples of Flag values used on the field forms

B	Sample was taken from bottom of lake
I	Parameter not recorded or deleted due to instrument problems or maintenance issues
L	Parameter recorded but suspected to be incorrect value; There is a low probability that the value is incorrect
M	There is a moderate probability that the value is incorrect
H	There is a high probability that the value is incorrect

Physicochemical Parameters - Temperature, pH, D.O., Conductivity: Record the values for each of the physicochemical parameters indicated from the water probe. 1) **Temp**-°C, 2) **pH**-Standard Units, 3) **D.O.**-mg/l, and 4) **Conductivity**-µmhos/cm.

Sonde I.D.: Record the sonde instrument identification number. This is usually marked on the sonde with a black sharpie. Do not confuse this with the jeep number often marked on the camera in white ink. **Do not record the number written on the display unit as this unit does not store calibration information.** If for some reason the sonde's instrument identification number is not apparent, then write down the WV Property Tag number (found on a blue tag) or the Manufacture's Serial Number on the instrument so that the proper identification number can be tracked down later and remarked onto the sonde.

Seasonal Water Level: Indicate the water level relative to the season as 1) **Below Normal**, 2) **Normal**, 3) **Above Normal**, or 4) **Flooding**. **Example**: in general, high water in autumn would be Above Normal.

Water Odors: Record the odors described (include any odors not listed) that are associated with water in the sampling area: 1) **Normal**, 2) **Sewage**, 3) **Petroleum**, 4) **Chemical**, 5) **Anaerobic (Septic)**, or 6) **Other**. Collaborate with the Biomorph in making the decision.

Foam/Suds: Rate the any Foam or Suds on the surface of the water based on the following scale: **0-None**, **1-Low**, **2-Moderate**, **3-High**, **4-Extreme**, and **NR-Not Rated**. The presence of foam in streams is usually a product of nature. The most common cause of "natural" foam streams is turbulence via riffles and runs. Foam may also occur when plants and small aquatic organisms decompose and release a variety of organic compounds. Organic compounds leached from the soil also cause foam. Natural foam has a somewhat earthy or fishy smell, and it breaks down rather quickly. Foam from silt or erosion will usually have a brown color. Foams formed in the presence of acid mine drainage will often take on the color of any metal hydroxides in the stream (most commonly orange from iron hydroxides). Suds, however, originate from soaps and

detergents entering the stream via straight pipes and drainages. They can be easily distinguished from foam by their scent (*i.e.*, they smell like soap) and the bubbles often have an iridescence.

Surface Oils: Note the term(s) that best describes the relative amount of water surface oils present: 1) **None**, 2) **Flecks**, 3) **Sheen**, 4) **Globs**, or 5) **Slick**. Collaborate with the Biomorph in making the decision. These are generally associated with urban, industrial, or oil/gas activities.

Turbidity: Indicate the term that best describes the amount of material suspended in the water column: 1) **Clear**, 2) **Slightly Turbid**, 3) **Moderately Turbid**, 4) **Highly Turbid** (or Turbid). It is usually best to look in the pools to evaluate this. Also, you can look at the water samples collected.

Water Color: Indicate whether the water color is normal (clear) or colored (*e.g.*, orange for iron impacted streams).

Precipitation Status: Describe **precipitation events only** for the area during the time of visit and within the last 24 hours if possible. Comment on any heavy rainfall events, snowmelt, or storms that might have an impact on the water quality during sampling. This information can also be gathered by questioning locals you encounter, especially if you are just arriving to the area at the beginning of the week.

Major Rain Event in past week?: If there were any major rain events in the past week answer **YES** or **NO**. A major rain event is defined as a precipitation event that would result in the rise of stream level and/or drastic change in the turbidity of the stream (clear to muddy). For example, in a small 1st order stream, a brief light shower will probably not result in a change of the water level or turbidity, but light showers that last all day might. However, in a large stream or river, the same all day light showers would probably not affect the water level or turbidity to any great extent.

Peak Runoff: If it is raining or has rained recently, which of the following best describes the peak runoff (flush) condition of the stream at the site when water samples were collected: 1) **<1 hour**, 2) **1-4 hours**, 3) **4 -12 hours**, 4) **12-24 hours**, 5) **>24 hours**, 6) **Unknown**. Unless you have monitored the rainfall prior to arriving, the most likely answer is Unknown during your first day in the area.

Is the stream level rising, falling, or at baseflow at the time of visit?: Indicate if the stream level is 1) at **Baseflow**, 2) **Rising**, or 3) **Falling**. This can be hard to judge if a major rain event has occurred in the past week or if you are just arriving to the area at the beginning of the week. Attempt to answer the best that you can.

No Flow?: If a flow was scheduled for the site and not performed, then indicate if one of the following applies: 1) **Dry**, 2) **Low Flow**, 3) **Too Deep/Too Fast**, 4) **Instrument Failure**, 5) **Frozen/Ice**, or 6) **Safety**. **Note that this box is not on the Wadeable Benthic form since. This is because a benthic sample would never be collected under most of these “No Flow” conditions. However, this box is found on the TMDL and General WQ forms.**

Stream Bank/Riparian Buffer Zone Vegetation/Cover Type

Riparian Vegetation Classification

This segment of the stream assessment form was originally developed to address certain objectives proposed in WAB’s application for funding under the Wetland’s Development Grant Program, 104(b)(3). The principal objective of the project is to assess the integrity of riparian vegetation zones in selected priority watersheds. The following parameters were indicated as possible measures for meeting the proposed objective:

- 1) Erodibility of riverbank soils
- 2) Density of bank vegetative cover
- 3) Riparian disruptive pressure
- 4) Riparian zone width
- 5) Percent trees, shrubs, herbs, (bank and riparian zone)

STREAM BANK VEGETATION performs a vital role in the control of erosion to streams. Trees and woody shrubs exhibit deeper and more permanent root systems than grasses and herbaceous plants and are, thus, more effective in reducing erosion throughout the year.

THE RIPARIAN VEGETATIVE ZONE serves as a buffer zone to pollutants that may enter a stream through runoff, controls erosion, and provides stream habitat and nutrient input into the stream. Relatively undisturbed riparian zones with large dominant tree species reflect healthy stream systems and are generally considered indicative of the best possible conditions.

The following visual estimation procedures are a semi-quantitative evaluation of the type and amount of different types of stream bank and riparian vegetation. The assessment will be used to evaluate the health and level of disturbance of the stream corridor.

The following discussion applies only to the Stream Bank / Riparian Buffer Zone Vegetation / Cover Type section on Page 4 of the Stream Assessment Form.

While standing in a position perpendicular to the stream, visually establish a distance of **18 meters** from the right and left stream edge. This 18 m zone (one on each side of

stream) will run parallel with the stream throughout the entire 100 m assessment area. Aerial coverage (described below) of the vegetation types will be conducted within this 18 m zone.

What is the dominant vegetation type in the reach?: Determine the dominant vegetation type within the 100 m reach as 1) **Deciduous** (*i.e.*, Oak, Maple, Sycamore, Birch, Beech, etc. >90%), 2) **Coniferous** (*i.e.*, Spruce, Pine, Hemlock, Rhododendron, etc. >90%), 3) **Mixed Deciduous** (>10-49% Coniferous), or 4) **Mixed Coniferous** (>10-49% Deciduous) Determination is made by considering both banks together.

Conceptually divide the stream bank and riparian vegetation into three layers: the **CANOPY** layer (> 15 ft high or 5 m), the **UNDERSTORY** layer (1.5 to 15 ft high or 0.5 to 5 m), and the **GROUND COVER** layer (< 1.5 ft high or < 0.5 m). Note that more than one vegetation type (*e.g.* grasses or woody shrubs) can potentially occur in more than one layer. Right and left banks are scored separately while looking downstream. Also, indicate the percent of **BARREN OR BARE SOIL** within the same 100 m reach and 18 m zone. This refers to highly erodible surfaces and does not include rock cliff faces or asphalt/concrete roads.

The **CANOPY** category includes big trees such as sycamore, silver maple, box elder, river birch, cottonwood, and hemlock. The **UNDERSTORY** layer includes small trees and shrubby vegetation such as willow, alder, rhododendron, knotweed, wingstem, and multiflora rose. **GROUND COVER** vegetation includes ferns, mosses, and grasses.

⇒ **Note: If you are evaluating the stream when the leaves are not on the trees (October-April/May), you need to visualize the CANOPY AND UNDERSTORY as if it was summer. This should not be too hard to do since the branches of the tree indicate where the leaves would be. However, the GROUND COVER cannot be visualized like this very well (especially in forested/wooded riparian areas) as many of the species composing the ground cover layer community are not up and fully visible from October to April/May. Therefore, you must evaluate the GROUND COVER as best as you can with what you can see on the day of sampling.**

Estimate the aerial cover separately in each of the three layers. **The aerial cover can be thought of as the amount of shadow provided by a particular layer.** The maximum cover in each layer is 100%, so the sum of the aerial cover for the combined three layers could add up to 300%. The four entry choices for aerial cover within each of the three vegetation layers are: **0 (Absent= Zero Cover)**, **1 (Sparse= <10%)**, **2 (Moderate= 10-40%)**, **3 (Heavy= 40-75%)**, or **4 (Very Heavy= >75%)**. These ranges are provided as a key on the Stream Assessment Form.

When rating vegetation cover types, mixtures of two or more subdominant classes might all be given sparse ("1") moderate ("2") or heavy ("3") rankings. A very heavy cover class with no clear subdominant class might be ranked "4" with all the remaining classes either moderate ("2"), sparse ("1") or absent ("0"). Two heavy classes with 40-75% cover can be both ranked "3".

Stream Surface Shading (%): Stream surface shading plays a significant role in maintaining water quality in streams. Exposed streams will often experience increased water temperatures that may be directly or indirectly limiting to some organisms and may be favorable to nuisance algae and result in decreased dissolved oxygen. Light intensity may be favorable to some organisms and limiting to others. In general, a partially shaded (50-75%) stream achieves the greatest diversity. A fully shaded stream may inhibit the growth and reproduction of herbaceous aquatic and riparian plants. This situation can potentially inhibit primary production, cover, and habitat. However, this situation does provide better temperature control and increased allochthonous (organic material from outside sources) food resources.

Estimate the percent of stream surface shading using the following categories: **Fully Exposed (0-25%)**, **Partially Shaded (25-50%)**, **Partially Exposed (50-75%)**, and **Fully Shaded (75-100%)**. Evaluate the shading based on a cloudless day in the summer at noon.

Riparian Vegetation Comments Box: *Describe your impressions of the condition of the riparian zone in the 100 m stream reach.* What is its' buffering ability? How intact is the riparian vegetation? Describe the vegetation species assemblage for both sides. Indicate the presence of human activities. Note the land cover type(s) immediately adjacent to the 18 m riparian vegetative zone on both left and right banks. Again, comments in this section are useful during 305(b) stream assessments.

Amphibian Pool Present in riparian area?: Indicate if any of the following amphibian habitat types were present in the riparian area of the stream assessment reach:

- 1) **Vernal Pools** - Vernal pools are an extremely scarce wetland habitat type occurring only where certain soil conditions are present. In late summer, fall and early winter, vernal pools appear as dry, dusty indentations mostly devoid of vegetation. Look for depressions filled with water along the stream bank and riparian zone.
- 2) **Mud Puddle** – small depressions in dirt roads are often great habitats for amphibian breeding.
- 3) **Sediment Ponds** - sediment ponds are built to trap runoff water. Sediment settles to the bottom of these ponds rather than accumulating in local creeks and streams. Typically found below valley fills and other mined areas.
- 4) **Farm Pond** – livestock watering hole or used for irrigation to crops.

- 5) **Ditch** – roadside ditches or channel-ways that trap water in low places.
- 6) **Lake** – larger than a pond.
- 7) **Cattail Wetland** – typical of waterbodies that are considered to be true wetlands (*i.e.*, Greenbottom Swamp or Canaan Valley).
- 8) **Other** – Include comments in the area provided to elaborate on any of these.

PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a

EPA's Rapid Habitat Assessment Form

The habitat assessment approach used in this protocol is adapted from EPA's Rapid Bioassessment approach and refined from various applications across the country (**see Figure 2**). The approach focuses on integrating information from specific parameters on the structure of the physical habitat. Specific instruction and training are necessary for an adequate assessment of habitat quality. For each habitat parameter listed, carefully read the description under each ranking category and place the score in the left margin that best describes the condition of the 100 m stream assessment area.

EPA Rapid Habitat Assessment References

- Barbour, M.T., J. Gerritsen, B.D. Snyder, and J.B. Stribling. 1999. Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Streams and Rivers: Periphyton, Benthic Macroinvertebrates and Fish, Second Edition. EPA 841-B-99-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Office of Water; Washington, D.C.
- Plafkin, J.L., M.T. Barbour, K.D. Porter, S.K. Gross, and R.M. Hughes. 1989. Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Streams and Rivers: Benthic Macroinvertebrates and Fish. EPA 444-4-89-001. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Office of Water; Washington, D.C.

United States
Environmental Protection
Agency

Office of Water
4503F
Washington, DC 20460

EPA 841-B-99-002
July 1999



Whitman

Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Wadeable Streams and Rivers

Periphyton, Benthic Macroinvertebrates, and Fish

Second Edition

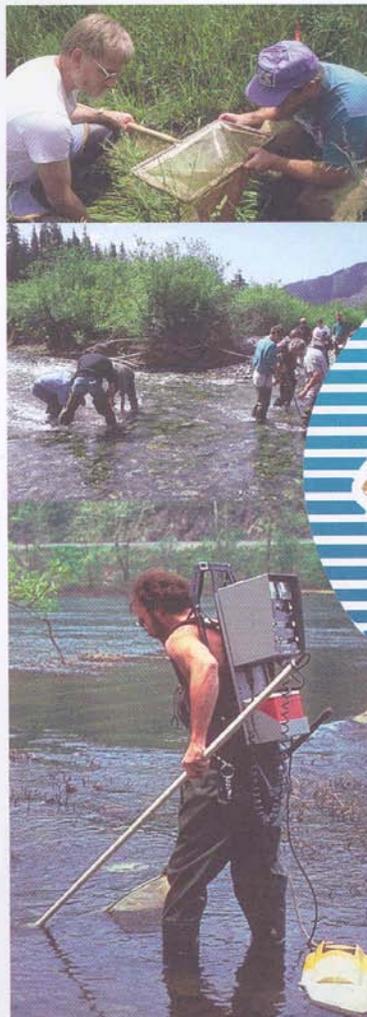


Figure 2. Cover of EPA's Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Wadeable Streams and Rivers (Second Edition)

Different assessment forms are used for streams that are riffle/run prevalent versus those that are pool/glide prevalent. After making the initial survey of the stream assessment area, classify the stream as either riffle/run or glide/pool prevalent based on your visual assessment of the dominant habitat type (Note: glide/pool habitats will require "MACS" macroinvertebrate sampling methods for low gradient streams). The WAB sampling strategy dictates that a riffle/run habitat is sampled **if possible**. If a stream reach is mostly glide/pool but has a small area of riffle/run, sample the riffle/run if there is enough to obtain the 1 m² of substrate. Accordingly, fill out the **riffle/run** Rapid Habitat assessment form. A glide/pool habitat form should only be used when the MACS sampling method is used. **IMPORTANT: In general, MACS sites are not assessed unless indicated on the stream list or there is a special interest in obtaining data from the site. The MACS technique should only be used in streams that are truly "wetland like", such as sites impounded downstream and offer very little to no observable flow. A general rule of thumb is if you have a difficult time determining which direction the stream is flowing, then MACS methods are probably applicable. MACS methods can also be used on large streams that are too deep to wade. In these larger streams, samples are collected from the bank by jabbing the net into appropriate habitat types. Furthermore, if a stream is heavily embedded with sand but has a perceivable flow, it should not be sampled by MACS methods. Riffle/run protocols should be followed (*i.e.*, benthic samples should be collected by kicking the sand). Also, MACS methods should only be used if there are enough good habitats to collect all 20 jabs/sweeps.**

⇒ NOTE: In low water conditions, many of the RBP parameters will be rated lower than their potential. Do not try to envision a full stream channel (bank to bank) when rating the parameters. Rate the stream conditions as they exist on that day. For example, in low flow conditions the epifaunal substrate/available fish cover parameter would be rated lower than its potential simply because the habitat components are not covered with water during that visit.

Riffle/Run Prevalence

1. EPIFAUNAL SUBSTRATE/AVAILABLE FISH COVER: Epifaunal substrates are essentially the amount of niche space or hard substrates (stones, snags) available for insects and snails. Numerous types of insect larvae attach themselves to rocks, logs, branches, or other submerged substrates. The greater the variety and number of available niches or attachments, the greater the variety of macroinvertebrate life will exist in the streams. Rocky bottom areas are critical for maintaining a healthy variety of insects in most high-gradient streams.

Fish cover includes the relative quantity and variety of natural structures in the stream such as fallen trees, logs, and branches, large rocks, and undercut banks, that are available for refugia, feeding, or laying eggs. A large variety

of submerged structures in the stream provide aquatic organisms with a large number of niches, thus increasing the diversity.

Note: The Benthic Macroinvertebrate Substrate parameter at the top of PAGE 7-Non-RBP Parameters should be considered when rating this parameter as it is essentially the same as rating just the Epifaunal Substrate half of the parameter.

2. **EMBEDDEDNESS**: refers to the extent to which rocks (gravel, cobble, and boulders) are covered or sunken into the silt, sand, or mud of the stream bottom. Generally, as rocks become embedded the surface area available to macroinvertebrates and fish (shelter, spawning, and egg incubation) is decreased. To estimate the percent of embeddedness, observe the amount of silt or finer sediments overlying and surrounding the rocks. If kicking does not dislodge the rocks or cobble, they may be greatly embedded. It is useful to observe the extent of dark area on the underside of a few rocks. **To avoid confusion with SEDIMENT DEPOSITION (habitat parameter number 5), observations of EMBEDDEDNESS should be taken in the upstream and central portions of riffles and cobble substrate areas. Collaborate with the biomorph on this parameter.**
3. **VELOCITY/DEPTH REGIMES**: examines the availability of each of the four primary current/depth combinations: (1) slow-deep, (2) slow-shallow, (3) fast-deep, and (4) fast-shallow. The best streams in high gradient regions will have all four habitat types present. The presence or availability of these four habitats relates to the stream's ability to provide and maintain a stable aquatic environment. The general guidelines are 0.5m depth to separate shallow from deep, and 0.3 meters/second to separate fast from slow.
4. **CHANNEL ALTERATION**: is a measure of large-scale changes in the shape of the stream channel. Many streams in urban and agricultural areas have been straightened, deepened, or diverted into concrete channels often for flood control purposes. Such streams have far fewer natural habitats for fish, macroinvertebrates, and plants than do naturally meandering streams. Channel alteration is present when a stream runs through a concrete channel; when artificial embankments, riprap, and other forms of artificial bank stabilization or structures are present; when the stream is very straight is very straight for significant distances; when dams and bridges are present; and when other such changes have occurred. Scouring is often associated with channel alteration. In some instances, channel alteration may benefit the stream (e.g. K-dams). This parameter should be rated regardless of the intent of the channel alteration. *Note that in the example of K-dams, the channel alteration would be depressed by the presence of these structures, but the*

Epifaunal Substrate/Available Fish Cover and/or Velocity/Depth Regime score could possibly benefit from their presence.

5. **SEDIMENT DEPOSITION**: measures the amount of sediment that has accumulated and the changes that have occurred to the stream bottom because of the deposition. Deposition occurs from large-scale movement of sediment caused by watershed erosion. Sediment deposition may cause the formation of islands, point bars (areas of increased deposition usually at the beginning of meanders that increase in size as the channel is diverted toward the outer bank) or shoals, or result in the filling of pools. Increased sedimentation also results in increased deposition. Usually this is evident in areas that are obstructed by natural or man-made debris and areas where the stream flow decreases, such as bends. High levels of sediment deposition create an unstable and continually changing environment that becomes unsuitable for many organisms.
To avoid confusion with EMBEDDEDNESS (habitat parameter number 2), observations of sediment deposition should be taken in pools and slow water depositional areas.

Upstream Watershed Sediment Deposition Total: In addition to rating the 100m reach, if any portion of the upstream watershed was observed, please rate the Sediment Deposition for the section observed. It is not required to drive up the watershed for observations, but rather as a way to take advantage of situations where the upstream area is observed on the way to or from a site.

6. **RIFFLE FREQUENCY**: is a way to measure the sequence of riffles occurring in a stream. Riffles are a source of high quality habitat and diverse fauna. Therefore, an increased frequency of occurrence greatly enhances the diversity of the community. The types and variety of riffles should also be considered once the riffle distance to stream width ratio is determined.
7. **CHANNEL FLOW STATUS**: is the degree to which the channel is filled with water. The flow status will change as the channel enlarges or as flow decreases as a result of dams and other obstructions, diversions for irrigation, or drought. When water does not cover much of the streambed, the amount of useable substrate for aquatic organisms is limited. Do not count extremely large substrate (giant boulders) particles that would rarely if ever be submerged or used by aquatic organisms.
8. **BANK STABILITY**: measures whether the stream banks are eroded (or have the potential for erosion). Steep banks are more likely to collapse and suffer from erosion than gently sloping banks and are therefore considered unstable. Signs of erosion include crumbling, unvegetated banks, exposed

tree roots, and exposed soil. However, exposed cliff faces or rocks provide a stable, non-erodible bank. In addition, the extent to which the bank has healed over with vegetation and roots (*i.e.*, the age of the erosional scars) must be considered. **This parameter is scored by considering right and left banks separately throughout the entire 100 m assessment area.** For example, after observing the right bank, it was determined that less than 5% of the total bank area in the 100 m assessment reach exhibited erosional scars. This would result in an optimal score in the range of 9-10.

Upstream Watershed Bank Stability Total: In addition to rating the 100m reach, if any portion of the upstream watershed was observed, please rate the Bank Stability for the section observed. It is not required to drive up the watershed for observations, but rather as a way to take advantage of situations where the upstream area is observed on the way to or from a site.

9. BANK VEGETATIVE PROTECTION: measures the amount of the stream bank that is covered by natural vegetation for the area (large trees, small trees, herbaceous layer for most of WV streams). **For WAB assessments, the stream bank extends from the edge of the channel floor up to the crest-over at top of bank.** The top or “crest-over” of the bank can be determined by looking for an obvious slope break that differentiates the channel from a flat floodplain higher than the channel. The root systems of plants (trees, shrubs, grasses) growing on stream banks helps hold soil in place, thereby reducing the amount of erosion that is likely to occur. **Large roots should be considered when rating this parameter.** The Bank Vegetative Protection parameter supplies information on the ability of the bank to resist erosion, as well as additional information on the uptake of nutrients of by the plants, the control of in-stream scouring, and stream shading. Consideration must be given to the abundance and diversity of trees, shrubs, or grasses (grazed/mowed and un-grazed/un-mowed). The frequency or age of mowing and grazing can also be considered. Banks that have full, diverse, natural plant growth are better for fish and macroinvertebrates than are banks without vegetative protection or those shored up with concrete or riprap. However, the presence of exposed cliff faces or rocks should not detract from this score as they are natural structures that normally do not support vegetation. **This parameter is scored by considering right and left banks separately throughout the entire 100 m assessment area.**

Upstream Watershed Bank Vegetative Protection Total: In addition to rating the 100m reach, if any portion of the upstream watershed was observed, please rate the Bank Vegetative Protection for the section observed. It is not required to drive up the watershed for observations, but rather as a way to

take advantage of situations where the upstream area is observed on the way to or from a site.

10. **WIDTH OF UNDISTURBED VEGETATION ZONE**: is a measure of disruptive changes to the natural vegetative zone (big trees, small trees, shrubs, & non-woody macrophytes or herbaceous layer for most of WV streams) because of grazing or human interference (e.g. mowing). In areas of high grazing pressure from livestock or where residential and urban development activities disrupt the riparian zone, the growth of a natural plant community is impeded. Residential developments, urban centers, golf courses, and pastureland are the common causes of anthropogenic effects on the riparian zone. **This parameter is scored by considering right and left banks separately throughout the entire 100 m assessment area.**

Upstream Watershed Width of Undisturbed Vegetation Zone Total: In addition to rating the 100m reach, if any portion of the upstream watershed was observed, please rate the **Width of Undisturbed Vegetation Zone for the section** observed. It is not required to drive up the watershed for observations, but rather as a way to take advantage of situations where the upstream area is observed on the way to or from a site.

TOTAL: Total all of the scores for a final RBP score from 0-200. **See Table 5 for the Total RBP Score Categories.**

Table 5. Total RBP Score Categories

RBP Total Score	Category
160-200	Optimal
110-159	Sub-Optimal
60-109	Marginal
0-59	Poor

Estimated Mileage of Upstream Watershed Evaluated: Indicate the approximate mileage of the upstream watershed that was observed for the Upstream Watershed scores.

Glide/Pool Prevalence Form (Low Gradient Macs-Type Sites Only)

1. **EPIFAUNAL SUBSTRATE/AVAILABLE FISH COVER**: See No. 1 under PAGE 5a - RIFFLE/RUN PREVALENCE. In low gradient streams with muddy bottoms, the epifaunal substrate consists mostly of submerged logs or snags, and aquatic vegetation.

2. POOL SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION: evaluates the type and condition of bottom substrates found in pools. Firmer sediment types (e.g., gravel, sand) and rooted aquatic plants support a wider variety of organisms than a pool substrate dominated by mud or bedrock and no plants. In addition, a stream that has a uniform substrate in its pools will support far fewer types of organisms than a stream that has a variety of substrate types.
3. POOL VARIABILITY: rates the overall mixture of pool types found in streams, according to size and depth. The four basic types of pools are large shallow, large-deep, small-shallow, and small-deep. A stream with many pool types will support a wide variety of aquatic species. Rivers with low sinuosity (few bends) and monotonous pool characteristics do not have sufficient quantities and types of habitat to support a diverse aquatic community. As a general guideline, consider a pool deep if it is greater than 1 meter in depth and large if its length, width, or oblique dimension is greater than half the stream width.
4. CHANNEL ALTERATION: **See No. 5 under Riffle/Run Prevalence.**
5. SEDIMENT DEPOSITION: **See No. 6 under Riffle/Run Prevalence.**
6. CHANNEL SINUOSITY: evaluates the meandering or the relative frequency of bends in the stream. Streams that meander provide a variety of habitats for aquatic organisms, whereas straight stream segments are characterized by monotonous habitats that are prone to flooding. A high degree of sinuosity creates a variety of pools and reduces the energy from surges when the stream flow fluctuates. The absorption of this energy by bends protects the stream from excessive erosion and flooding.
7. CHANNEL FLOW STATUS: determines the percent of the channel that is filled with water. The flow status will change as the channel enlarges or as flow decreases as a result of dams and other obstructions, diversions for irrigation, or drought. The water will not cover as much of the streambed, thus decreasing the amount of living space for aquatic organisms. In muddy bottom streams, the decrease in water level will expose logs and snags, thus reducing the areas with good habitat.
8. BANK STABILITY: **See No. 8 under Riffle/Run Prevalence.**
9. BANK VEGETATIVE PROTECTION: **See No. 9 under Riffle/Run Prevalence.**
10. WIDTH OF UNDISTURBED VEGETATION ZONE: **See No. 10 under Riffle/Run Prevalence.**

TOTAL: Total all of the scores for a final RBP score from 0-200. **See Table 5 above for the Total RBP Score Categories.**

PAGE 7

Non-RBP Parameters

BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE SUBSTRATE: This parameter measures the quality of the benthic macroinvertebrate substrate throughout the 100m assessment reach. ***This measure is essentially the same as the Epifaunal Substrate half of the Epifaunal Substrate/ Available Fish Cover parameter at the top of PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a. Only the benthic macroinvertebrate substrate quality should be considered with this parameter.*** The benthic macroinvertebrate substrate is essentially the amount of niche space or hard substrate (i.e., stones, snags) available for insects, snails, worms, clams, and crustaceans to colonize. Numerous types of benthic organisms attach themselves to rocks, logs, branches, or other submerged substrates. The greater the diversity and abundance of available niches for attachment the greater the diversity and abundance of benthic macroinvertebrates in the stream. Rocky bottom areas are critical for maintaining a healthy variety of benthic macroinvertebrates in most high-gradient streams.

The relative amount of cobble drives this parameter as it is the most productive and optimal substrate size-class for benthic macroinvertebrates in riffle/run samples. As the prevalence of the benthic substrate drifts into size classes larger (boulder and bedrock) or smaller (gravels, sand, and silt) than cobble, the productivity decreases. Boulders and bedrock may be stable, but do not have as much potential niche space as cobble. However, it is important to consider the size and texture of the boulders and bedrock as smaller boulders provide more niche space than larger boulders and rough/fissured boulders and/or bedrock provide more niche space than smooth boulders and/or bedrock. Gravels, especially coarse gravel, may provide niche space, but are more transient (i.e., unstable and susceptible to scouring) than cobble. Fine gravel, sand, and silt are especially bad as they provide minimal niche space and are extremely transient. Therefore, the relative amount and sizes of the transient particles is also important to consider when rating this parameter.

NOTE: **Rate this parameter for the entire reach, even if the reach is not representative of benthic sample area.** For example, you may have a stream reach that is 95% bedrock, but you were able to do all of the benthic samples in an isolated cobble-dominant riffle with the best benthic habitat you have ever seen. Since the reach is so dominated by bedrock, you would probably score the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Substrate Score in the Marginal to Poor categories (depending on the quality of bedrock as discussed above). ***The quality of the actual benthic***

macroinvertebrate substrate area that was sampled will be described in better detail in the middle of PAGE 9-Benthic Substrate Sample Composition.

AESTHETIC RATING: Record the aesthetic character of the stream assessment area **(NOT JUST IN THE STREAM)** based on the abundance of human refuse that is present in and around the stream bank. Consider any piece of trash that could potentially be washed into the stream by high flows or floods. This is also known as the **TRASH INDEX.**

REMOTENESS RATING: Record the remoteness of the stream assessment area based on its wild character, proximity to roads, and development activities.

PRS and Stressor Info

Is Site a Potential Reference?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Consider the Water Chemistry, Benthos, Habitat, Human Disturbance, Location (*i.e.*, Ecoregion), Level I vs. Level II Reference Condition, *etc.* ***Refer to Determining Candidate Reference Sites While In the Field under Chapter II.Section A.Part 2.D. Reference Sites and Potential Reference Sites for more information.***

If not a Potential Reference, why?: Indicate whether this site appears to be relatively undisturbed and may be considered as a potential reference site (see reference site criteria). Also make notes as to why the stream does not satisfy reference site criteria in the space provided. **Note that a yes answer will not necessarily mean the site will achieve reference status as many other criteria that cannot be determined in the field are considered. Many sites that a person would typically say no to as a potential reference site still meet all of the reference criteria. Therefore it is important to consider only those criteria that can absolutely be determined in the field when answering this question. Refer to Determining Candidate Reference Sites While In the Field under Chapter II.Section A.Part 2.D. Reference Sites and Potential Reference Sites for more information.**

Stressor Info: Indicate all definite stressors that are believed to have an impact on the benthic macroinvertebrate community at the site. Options include: **Sediment**, **Fecal** and/or **Nutrients** (both considered Organic Enrichment), **Metals** (or acid metals which represent toxicity), **pH** (low pH playing a role in metal toxicity and high pH playing a role in ionic stress), **Sulfate** and/or **Conductivity** (both considered ionic stressors), and **Other** stressors. **Please check Other if the site is located 1-2 miles downstream of any impoundment (e.g., lakes, ag or mining ponds, flood control dams, beaver dams, low water ford/bridge dams) or a valley fill (mining or road) structures. Be sure to include type of structure (with type of impoundment release), distance upstream to the structure, number and size of tributaries in between that may**

alter the water chemistry (including dilution effects), and size of impoundment in m x m.

EXTRA SPACE FOR SPILL-OVER COMMENTS AND NOTES BELOW. When using this space, please indicate from which section of the form this is a continuation. For example, “More Sediment Notes” or “More Stream Reach Activities & Disturbances Notes” will allow the data entry person to associate this to the appropriate subform in the database. Also be sure to indicate that there are additional notes here under the appropriate section (e.g., “More Notes on Page 7”).”

PAGE 8

Wildlife & Freshwater Mussel Observations

Note actual wildlife or plants observed or indications of their presence (e.g., minnows are common, kingfisher observed, frog observed, etc.). **List organisms/wildlife that were observed at the sample site. Any organisms observed and put into the Benthic Sample Jar should be noted on page 9 under Benthic Sample Notes. PLEASE NOTE ANY NON-TROUT FISH OR SALAMANDERS RELEASED FROM THE BENTHIC SAMPLE HERE! ALL TROUT SHOULD BE NOTED ONLY IN THE SECTION BELOW. REMEMBER TO DOCUMENT ANY SNAILS COLLECTED FOR DNR HERE!**

Common Name: The common name of the organism observed.

Genus/Species: The genus or species of the organism observed.

Comments: Specific notes concerning the organism or evidence of organism observed.

Number Observed: The number of individuals of that organism observed.

Observed: The initials of the observer.

Did you see fresh water mussels?: Answer **Yes** or **No**.

Alive or Dead?: Answer **Alive** or **Dead**.

Did you collect dead shells?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Dead shells are submitted to Doug Wood for identification or further identification by WVDNR.

Trout Observations (For Sites that are not actively being sampled for Fish!)

This section is provided to help WVDEP obtain more information about the status and location of trout populations in the state. From this information, WVDEP can more

effectively determine which streams would be good candidates for intensive surveying and monitoring of trout populations and ultimately if the stream qualifies for Trout Stream Status and Protection. This information will also be shared with the WVDNR (West Virginia Division of Natural Resources) which is charged with the management of all fish in West Virginia. **Note that this section is only for documenting passive observations of trout (i.e., casual sightings, trout that were inadvertently caught in the benthic net, etc.) and not for use with any sort of active fish sampling activities (i.e., electrofishing, netting, etc.). All data from active fish sampling activities are documented via a different protocol and set of forms.**

Did you see any trout?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Do not answer if you were not positive you saw a trout.

Comments: Comments regarding what was or not observed. Would you expect to see trout at this stream reach based on the habitat and water quality information available?

Observation Method: How was the trout observed? Was it passively caught in the benthic net during a kick? Was it observed freely swimming in the stream? Was it caught by an angler in the stream reach?

Species ID: List the Common Name of the trout species (i.e., Brook Trout, Brown Trout, Rainbow Trout, or Cutthroat Trout).

Count: The number of specimens of each trout species observed.

Size (CM): The size of the trout specimens in centimeters.

Notes: Notes about the trout specimens (e.g., reproductive or life stage, DELTs (Deformities, Erosions, Lesions, or Tumors).

Photo #'s: Any photo numbers associated with the trout specimens. If the identification of the trout specimens is unsure, a photo may be a means of identifying the specimens at a later date. **NOTE: All photo description information should still be entered on PAGE 10-Photography Log. This field just links a photo to an individual or group of specimens.**

PAGE 9

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Collection Information

Benthic Sample Collected?: Answer **Yes** or **No**.

If no, why?: Provide reason why benthic sample was not collected.

Benthic collection device: Indicate which device was used to collect benthic macroinvertebrate samples (bugs). **See Chapter IV. Section A. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sampling for a more detailed description of each device and its applicability.** Describe any deviations from the protocols below. 1) **Kicknet** (i.e., Rectangular frame dip-net), 2) **D-net**, or 3) **Hand** (i.e., Hand pick). **Note: Hand-pick methodology is not a comparable method and should only be used if indicated as an alternative on the stream list.**

Habitat Sampled and # of Each: **See Chapter IV. Section A. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sampling for a detailed description.** 1) **Riffle**, 2) **Run**, 3) **Woody snags (MACS)**, 4) **Vegetated banks (MACS)**, 5) **Aquatic plants (MACS)**.

Benthic Sample Comparability: Was benthic sample comparable with respect to riffle/run depth and velocity?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Sampling should generally occur only if the depth is at least 0.05 m deep and has enough velocity to push debris into the net.

Evidence of scouring?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Consider asking locals, look at new or recently deposited materials on banks, consider recent precipitation and flood events for the area.

Evidence of dry conditions?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Look for indications that the stream was dry or partially dry recently). Consider asking locals, past weather conditions, benthic macroinvertebrate density and diversity, and stream conditions while you are there.

Evidence of wet-weather stream?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Consider asking locals, look for dirt channel, vegetation and roots in channel growing across the stream, jagged rocks in the stream, no easily definable U-shaped channel, over abundance of leaves in the stream for the season. Consider watershed area, consider benthic density, diversity, and community composition while collecting sample.

Kick Area Depths (m): Record the measured depth of water at each kick sample location (usually four locations).

A blank space is provided to describe the site and explain responses to the previous questions regarding the benthic sample comparability. Also, any organisms observed **in the sample** should be recorded here. **Please note any fish, trout, or salamanders released from the benthic sample on PAGE 8-Wildlife & Freshwater Mussel Observations!!!!**

Benthic Substrate Sample Composition

Inorganic Substrate Components: **Using Table 6 below as a guide**, provide a visual estimate of the relative proportion of each of the seven particle types listed. **This assessment should be conducted only within the actual benthic collection area and should be done by the Biomorph.** Estimate the proportion of each substrate type within the 1m² riffle/run area that was sampled using the following scale:

Table 6. Substrate Size Classes for Benthic Inorganic Substrate Composition

Class	Code	Size	Description
Bedrock	BR	>4000 mm	Bigger than car
Boulder	BL	>250-4000 mm	Basketball to car
Cobble	CB	>64-250 mm	Tennis ball to Basketball
Coarse Gravel	CG	>16-64 mm	Marble to Tennis ball
Fine Gravel	FG	>2-16 mm	Ladybug to marble
Sand	SA	>0.06-2 mm	Gritty between fingers
Silt & Fines	ST	<0.06 mm	Smooth, not gritty (silt & muck)
Clay	CL	>4000 mm	Slick/ hard clay or hard-pan clay bottom

Low gradient (MACS) streams will require a visual estimate of the entire 100 m assessment area.

Describe Quality of Benthic Substrate: Describe the benthic sampling substrate quality in terms of relative sizes (e.g., small-sized vs. large-sized cobble or boulders), shapes (globular vs. flat vs. angular), texture (e.g., rough vs. smooth bedrock), layering (i.e., was the cobble stacked) and embeddedness (embedded by pea gravel vs. sand/silt). Also mention any unusual substrate features (e.g., trash or unnatural substrate that was sampled as substrate) and provide general comments about the benthic sample substrate. Note outstanding features like “nice stacked flat medium-sized cobble”, “very sandy with lots of fine gravel”, “large-sized boulders with a some coarse gravel here and there”, “large amounts of partially broken down leaf packs among the cobble”, “embedded with pea gravel rather than sand”, “lots of rough, fissured bedrock”. Indicate if you think the benthic sample substrate is stable and capable of maintaining benthic populations.

Visual Estimation of Periphyton and Aquatic Plant Density

Indicate Abundance of each: Periphyton (Brown-slick; Diatoms), Filamentous Algae (green), Aquatic Vascular Plants, Aquatic Moss : Indicate the abundance of periphyton, algae, aquatic plants, and “aquatic” mosses in the stream assessment area as **0-None, 1- Low, 2- Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Periphyton is algae, diatoms, fungi, bacteria, protozoa, and associated organic matter associated with stream channel substrates. They are useful indicators of water quality because they respond rapidly and are sensitive to a number of human disturbances, including habitat destruction, contamination by nutrients, metals, herbicides, and acids. In this section of the WAB assessment, periphyton will include only the microalgae. These are the microscopic organisms that make the substrate slick and slimy. They usually leave a brownish-yellow stain on your hand when rubbed.

Although generally included in the broad class of periphyton, filamentous algae (macroalgae) will be considered separately in this section. Filamentous algae include the long stringy types that are green in coloration and exhibit wavy undulations in stream currents. Note: during Periphyton collection, both the microalage and Filamentous Algae are collected (see Chapter V. PERIPHYTON PROTOCOLS).

Aquatic plants are generally associated with larger streams such as the New River and Cacapon River. Riverweed is an example that would be included in the aquatic plant category.

Aquatic mosses are those mosses found growing naturally in the water. They should not be confused with terrestrial mosses that are growing near the stream or under the water level in a stream that is typically dry for extended periods (Note: that terrestrial mosses can be a good indicator of stream intermittency as well as an excellent benthic macroinvertebrate habitat). True aquatic mosses are much darker and look like they have a different texture compared to terrestrial mosses.

Periphyton Collection Information

Periphyton Sample Collected?: Answer **Yes** or **No**.

If no, why?: Provide reason why periphyton sample was not collected.

Periphyton Habitat and #: Record the number of rocks selected from riffles and from runs during periphyton collection.

Shade and number of each: Record the number of rocks selected from the various shade categories during periphyton collection: **Fully Exposed (0-25%), Partly Shaded (25-50%), Partly Exposed (50-75%), Fully Shaded (75-100%)**. Example: 2 in Fully Exposed, 1 in Fully Shaded, and 2 in Partly Shaded. The shading ratings are estimates of the amount of shade (or conversely sunlight) at the stream site on the day of sampling throughout the duration of the day.

Periphyton Sample Comparability: Was periphyton sample comparable? (Consider questions above about benthic comparability): Answer **Yes** or **No**.

Periphyton Sample Notes: Use the space below to describe the Periphyton sample. Explain any variances from the collection protocol that may affect comparability. Was the substrate stable and undisturbed? Could the substrate have been scoured? Dry?

PAGE 10

Landowner/Stakeholder Information

If a landowner or stakeholder encountered during the sampling event you can keep track of contact information here by recording name address and/or phone numbers.

⇒ **Note:** If a landowner/stakeholder is interested in getting information about the stream, you must fill out a Landowner Data Request Card. This card has two portions, one on which you write down the mailing/email information and turn in with the paperwork to the map coordinator, and one on which you write down some of the instantaneous readings (*i.e.*, Sonde readings) and Total RBP score and give to the landowner/stakeholder before leaving the site. The cards were designed to speed up the process of returning information to the landowners.

Name: Name or names of the landowner/stakeholder(s) or company that owns, uses, or manages the land.

Stream Data Requested?: Were the results from this sample requested by the landowner? Check **Yes** or **No**. Again, checking this box will not ensure prompt delivery of the stream data, so also use the **Landowner Data Request Card**.

Address: Mailing address of the landowner.

Watershed Report Requested?: Was a future watershed report from the watershed being sampled requested by the landowner? Check **Yes** or **No**.

Phone: The primary phone number of the landowner.

Alt #: A secondary phone number of the landowner (cell phone or work phone).

Site Accessibility: A set of check boxes is provided to give a quick indication of what may be involved in getting to the site. Check all that apply. These boxes include: **Easy Access**, **Difficult Access**, **Private Property**, **Posted**, **Fenced**, **Gated**, **Get Key from Landowner**, **Beside Road**, **Short Hike**, **Long Hike**, **4x4 Needed**, **Boat Ramp**, or **Other (explain)**.

Landowner and Accessibility Notes: A blank field is provided to discuss how to find the landowner and the accessibility of the site including elaborations on the Site Accessibility check boxes discussed above. This location is also be a good place to keep track of people you talked to while trying to track down the landowner. In the case of a mistake landowner identity, this chain of information will help alleviate any misunderstandings between the field crew and true landowner, who is usually very angry that you did not talk to them to get access to the stream. ***Any information about the watershed that may affect the stream water quality or sampling should be recorded on the bottom left of PAGE 2 under the Comment Box describing the source of the information as “Landowner”.***

Photography Log

A more detailed description of the photography process can be found in ***Chapter II. Section B. Part 2. Photographic Documentation.***

Camera Type: The type of camera used (e.g., Canon, Olympus, or Sony).

Camera Number: The assigned number of the camera used. This is usually marked on the camera with a black sharpie. ***Do not confuse this with the jeep number often marked on the camera in white ink.*** If for some reason the camera’s instrument identification number is not apparent, then write down the Manufacture’s Serial Number on the instrument so that the proper identification number can be tracked down later and remarked onto the camera.

Photo ID # (Office): Obtained in the office after getting a unique identification number from the WABbase.

Disk-Photo # (Field): Each camera assigns these unique file names to photos in series from 0-99999 in a format associated with some letters (e.g., a photo will have a file name of DSV-00456). Write down the number portion of the file name on the form. ***Do not confuse this number with the photo count numbers on the cameras that indicate how many photos have been taken or can be taken, which reset once photos are removed or deleted from the camera.*** In addition, it is important to note that how the photos are removed from the camera may change this file name. ***This is required for all photos taken!***

Stream Name: The name of the stream featured in the photo. ***This is only required if the photo was not taken at a sample site.***

AN-Code: The AN-Code (if known) of the stream featured in the photo. ***This is only required if the photo was not taken at a sample site.***

Photo Description: A description of the photo as it relates to the stream (e.g., looking upstream from X-site) and the keyword features that may be found in the photo (e.g., AMD, eroded bank, channelization, an optimal score for bank vegetative protection, a poor score for sediment deposition, etc.). **This is required for all photos taken!**

Date: The date the photo was taken. ***This is only required if the photo was not taken on the same date as the sample or if it is not at a sample site.***

Photographer: The person who took the photo. **This is required for all photos taken!**

Sample ID: The designation for the sample that will tie the photo data to the other information on the form. **This field is filled out when the data is entered into the database. If a photo was not taken at a sample site, a “0” should be put in this box to help note those photos that are not from that sample site.**

Part 2. APPENDIX FORMS

In addition to the main form, there are several appendix forms that cover observations and parameter sets that are not as commonly used. When needed, these additional appendix forms should be attached to the main form upon completion of sampling.

APPENDIX #1 - Stream Discharge (Flow)

⇒ **This appendix form is used whenever a flow measurement is required during sampling (Mainly TMDL sites and Special Surveys or Projects, but also at some Wadeable Monitoring Sites). Be sure to fill out the AN-Code, Date, and Reviewer Initials just like the front of all form pages so that it can later be attached to the appropriate form by the map coordinator.**

This area is provided to record measurement made with a flow meter and the resulting CFS (cubic feet per second). Record the Flow Meter I.D., measurer and the time of measurement. ***Instructions for determining stream discharge (flow) are presented in Chapter VI. STREAM FLOW MEASUREMENT.***

Measurer: Record the flow measurer.

Time: The time of the flow measurement.

Flow Meter I.D.: The assigned number of the flow meter used. **Do not confuse this with the jeep number often marked on the flow meter in white ink.** If for some reason the flow meters' instrument identification number is not apparent, then write down the WV Property Tag number (found on a blue tag) or Manufacturer's Serial Number on the instrument so that the proper identification number can be tracked down later and remarked onto the flow meter.

Distance: Record distance from one bank along the flow transect (measuring tape) where the measurement is occurring.

Depth: Record the depth at the point of the flow measurement.

Velocity: Record the velocity at the point of the flow measurement.

Final Discharge Reading (cfs): Record the total stream discharge by entering in the Distance, Depth, and Velocity data from each increment into the Flow Spreadsheet or record the reading from a gage.

Do you think that this flow measurement is comparable?: Answer **Yes** or **No**. Do you think that there were enough unusual circumstances that would make you want to not consider the flow measurement comparable (e.g., too many shallow measurements below 0.1 ft depth, too many changes in the direction of flow vectors across the transects, etc.).

If not, why?: Why it is believed the flow measurement is considered not comparable.

USGS Gage Number: The ID number of the USGS gage queried for flow data.

Time: The time the gage was read for the flow measurement.

Gage Height or Control: The Height of the water on the USGS Gage.

APPENDIX #2 - Stream Bank Erodibility and Channel Profile Measurements

⇒ **This appendix form is used whenever information about a streams' erodibility and channel profile is needed. It is mostly used in cases where changes can be tracked thru time (e.g., at Long Term Monitoring Sites once per visit) or when additional information about sediment potential from erosion is required (i.e., at TMDL sites once during all 12 visits). Be sure to fill out the AN-Code, Date, and Reviewer Initials just like the front of all form pages so that it can later be attached to the appropriate form by the map coordinator.**

Stream Bank Erodibility Factors

Bank erosion potential is determined by using the diagrams and descriptions provided to evaluate the conditions of the stream banks within your reach. Score (1-3 scale) the various factors that have a role in bank erosion **for each bank (left and right descending banks)**. Choose the illustration and descriptions that most closely matches what you see. Compare your selection with to the scale (Increasing numbers mean increasing erodibility; lower scores indicate better conditions) to determine the

proper category. All measurements are broad generalizations about both banks in the 100m reach. These scores will be combined to calculate a Stream Bank Erodibility Index.

Do not attempt to rate these factors in atypical sections of the stream. You should record the most dominant bank condition by mentally averaging the bank condition for the reach.

Bankfull Height: Score the overall ratio of the Bankfull Depth vs. the Bank Height

1-High=Bankfull indicators very common throughout the reach; their elevations are mostly at or near the top of the bank; stream has access to its floodplain during high water and bankfull flow events as shown by leaf lines or debris in the floodplain.

2-Medium=Bankfull indicators somewhat common along portions of the reach; their elevations are usually below the top of the bank and more commonly at the middle or lower portions of the bank; channel may be somewhat incised.

3-Low=Bankfull indicators very infrequent throughout the reach; if observed, their elevations are in the middle and lower portions of the bank; channel is usually deeply incised.

Bank Angle: Score the overall angle of the banks. Note that undercuts should be considered for their erosion potential. Many undercuts are shallow enough and associated with heavy root balls so that their erosion potential is minimal.

1-Obtuse=Banks have a slight to moderate angle throughout most of the reach; may have some areas of erosion (< 30%) but mostly the reach shows little sign of disturbance.

2-Near Vertical=Banks have a moderate to steep slope throughout much of the reach; some erosion is occurring (30-60%) within the reach. Note: some banks are often steep but very stable especially if covered by hard surfaces or vegetation.

3-Acute=Banks have a steep angle or are undercut to the extent that potential for sloughing is very high) throughout much of the reach (> 60%); there are obvious signs of erosions such as bare soils, exposed roots etc. along with many depositional features (point bars, islands, lateral bars etc.) in the channel.

Veg/Root Density: Score the overall root density in and on the banks

1-High=More than 90% of the banks are covered by natural undisturbed vegetation (all layers are well represented); most roots systems probably extend to the lower portions of the bank.

2-Medium=60-90% of the banks are covered by natural vegetation (most layers represented but some may be absent); some disturbances such as mowed areas, pastures, trails etc. are evident; most root systems probably extend to the lower or middle sections of the bank.

3-Low=<60% of the banks covered by natural vegetation (only one or two layers represented but most are missing); areas of disturbance very obvious throughout most of the reach or non-native species dominate.

Stratification: Score the overall stratification of the bank's materials (*i.e.*, layering). This factor is only rated if the bank is exposed and can be observed

1-Homogenous=Where visible, banks have an almost uniform composition with no apparent layering.

2-Partly Stratified=Where visible, banks have some level of distinct layering into differing size classes.

3-Highly Stratified=Where visible, banks have extremely obvious alternating layers of size class particles.

Particle Size: Score the overall particle size of the bank

1-Boulder=Banks consist primarily of large sized materials (large cobble and boulder); smaller materials may be present but these can be seen only at the tops of the banks or on floodplain or terrace surfaces.

2-Cobble/Gravel=Banks consist primarily of a mix of materials from large to smaller sizes (cobble to fine gravel); some sand may be intermixed but it usually makes up < 20%.

3-Sand/Fines=Banks are primarily made up of small materials (mostly fine gravel and sand); silts and clay may be present.

Estimated Channel Profile (Width to Depth Ratio)

Widths to depth ratios (W/D) are defined as the ratio of the bankfull surface width to the mean depth of the bankfull channel. W/D is a key measurement in understanding the energy dynamics within a stream channel. If a stream has a high W/D (*i.e.*, a really wide stream that is shallow), the distribution of energy within the channel is such that the stress is placed near the banks. As W/D increases, hydraulic stress against the bank increases and erosion will accelerate making the stream wider in respect to its depth. In turn, the erosion increases the sediment supply to the stream. Since the stream is overly wide and shallow, it does not have enough power to move the excess sediment out and sediment deposition occurs in its center. This in turn reduces its depth, thus increasing the W/D and creating a feedback loop.

Using the diagrams provided on the form for guidance, measure the Bankfull Width and Bankfull Depths of the stream reach. All measurements are in meters (tenths) and should be conducted in an area that is representative of the overall reach condition (*i.e.*, do not pick the one excessively wide or narrow section of the reach for these

measurements). These estimates will assist in sediment load modeling. Note that Bankfull Depth=Bankfull Height + the Stream Depth at the observation location.

Estimated Bankfull Width: Estimate the Bankfull Width for the reach in meters.

If the Estimated Bankfull Width is ≤ 2.0 meters, then estimate 3 bankfull depth measurements at the following locations:

- 1) Left Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the left (descending) edge of the wetted stream channel.
- 2) Middle Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the mid-point of the wetted stream channel.
- 3) Right Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the right (descending) edge of the wetted stream channel.

If the Estimated Bankfull Width is > 2.0 meters, then estimate 5 bankfull depth measurements.

- 1) Left Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the left (descending) edge of the wetted stream channel.
- 2) Left-Middle Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the midpoint between the left (descending) edge of the wetted stream and the middle of the wetted stream channel.
- 3) Middle Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the mid-point of the wetted stream channel.
- 4) Right-Middle Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the midpoint between the right (descending) edge of the wetted stream and the middle of the wetted stream channel.
- 5) Right Bankfull Depth: Estimate the Bankfull Depth in meters at the right (descending) edge of the wetted stream channel.

APPENDIX #3 – TMDL/Wadeable Benthic Appendix Form

⇒ **This appendix form is used whenever a benthic survey is concurrently with a TMDL sampling event. There are just a few parameters that are rated at a TMDL site that are not covered on the Wadeable Benthic Form. Be sure to fill out the AN-Code, Date, and Reviewer Initials just like the front of all form pages so that it can later be attached to the appropriate form by the map coordinator.**

Sketch of Assessment Reach and Comments: Indicate North with (\uparrow), indicate flow direction, indicate water sample (wq), indicate lat and long site with (X). Draw the sketch with a coarse resolution to give an overall idea of the sample area beyond the

typical 100m reach. **You only need to do this sketch if you are conducting a TMDL-Initial assessment concurrently with a Wadeable Benthic Assessment. See Part 1. PAGE 1-Stream Verification to contrast the needs of this coarse resolution sketch versus the detailed sketch for the Wadeable Benthic Assessment form.**

Stream Debris

Dead Fish: Indicate the abundance of dead fish in and near the stream assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Garbage: Indicate the abundance of garbage in and near the stream assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.** Be sure to consider all garbage than may be moved into the channel during high flows/flooding.

Gas Bubbles: Indicate the abundance of gas bubbles in the stream in the assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Ice Cover: Indicate the abundance of ice cover on the stream in the assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Oil-Grease: Indicate the abundance of oil or grease in the stream in the assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Sewage: Indicate the abundance of sewage in the stream assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Sludge: Indicate the abundance of sludge in the stream assessment area as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.**

Other/Notes: Indicate the abundance of any other notable Stream Debris (e.g., recently fallen leaves) not mentioned as **0-None, 1-Low, 2-Moderate, 3-High, 4-Extreme, and NR-Not Rated.** Also make notes regarding any of the above.

APPENDIX #4 – Substrate Characterization (Pebble Count) including Gradient

⇒ **This appendix form is used whenever a Substrate Characterization (or Pebble Count). This type of survey is very infrequent, but when it does occur, it will often accompany the Wadeable Benthic Form. Be sure to fill out the AN-Code, Date, and Reviewer Initials just like the front of all form pages so that it can later be attached to the appropriate form by the map coordinator.**

This form is provided to record measurements made on the stream substrate and stream channel. Record the measurements in the spaces provided and make comments as necessary. **See Chapter VII. SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION**

(INCLUDING GRADIENT) for instructions on completing this section.

Reach Length: Record the total reach length in meters (100m minimum to 500m maximum)

Measurer: Record the measurer's initials

Recorder: Record the recorder's initials

Gradient Method: Check the box corresponding to the gradient method used (**Water-Filled Tube** or **Hand-Level**)

Wetted Width: Record the wetted width in m for that transect

Left, Left Mid, Middle, Right Mid, and Right: Record the substrate classification scores for these locations on the transect using the scale in **Table 7** below.

Table 7. Substrate Size Classes for Substrate Characterization (Pebble Counts)

Class	Code	Size	Description
Bedrock	BR	>4000 mm	Bigger than car
Boulder	BL	>250-4000 mm	Basketball to car
Cobble	CB	>64-250 mm	Tennis ball to Basketball
Coarse Gravel	CG	>16-64 mm	Marble to Tennis ball
Fine Gravel	FG	>2-16 mm	Ladybug to marble
Sand	SA	>0.06-2 mm	Gritty between fingers
Silt & Fines	ST	<0.06 mm	Smooth, not gritty (silt & muck)
Clay	CL	>4000 mm	Slick/ hard clay or hard-pan clay bottom
Leaves	LD	Regardless of size	Leaf packs
Wood	WD	Regardless of size	Root wads, snags, logs, sticks

Thalweg: Record the thalweg depth in m for that transect

Bankfull Height: Record the bankfull height in m for that transect

Rise: Record the stream rise in m for the distance between transects

Assessment Form Quality Assurance/Quality Control

During sampling, the team member who did not conduct the initial assessment performs an on-site review of every habitat assessment. The reviewer determines completeness and verifies that the information is correct through discussion with the other crew member. If the sampling team consists of one person, as is often the case during a TMDL assessment, the form is reviewed by the sampler for completeness before

leaving the site. There is no need to submit a duplicate habitat form if working alone as you will be unable to duplicate habitat evaluations.

Duplicate samples will be collected from 2.5% of the sites sampled and only when at least two people are on a sampling team. Habitat data will be collected along with other activities at the designated duplicate WAB sites. Both duplicates are collected at the same date and approximate time (as equipment sharing will allow) by different individuals. Duplicate habitat sampling consists sampling the site by each individual as if no one else was there to help (*i.e.*, one person serves as both Biomorph and Geomorph). Sampling occurs in the usual fashion with the Geomorph doing the habitat assessment and the Biomorph collecting benthos. To duplicate, these individuals reverse roles while keeping their data and samples completely separate. The duplicate data will be analyzed to ensure precision and repeatability of the sampling technique. Every effort is made to assure that different teams perform the duplicate sampling throughout the sampling season to ensure that all variability is being captured. The variances between individual techniques will be documented and used in future training sessions or individual re-training. In addition the duplicate data is looked at by Watershed Assessment Branch staff and scrutinized to find any possible discrepancies, contamination, or faults in the sampling methods and techniques. Any problems are brought to the attention of the program management and steps are made to immediately correct the problem. Data that is related to the problem are flagged with notes concerning the details of the situation so that decisions can be made whether or not to include the data in any further assessments or analysis. **See Chapter VIII. Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates for additional information.**

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with habitat sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. WAB members will visit one or two stream sites and each person will complete a habitat assessment form at each site. The results of these evaluations will be compared and the group will discuss problems with variability. Retraining will be conducted, if major discrepancies are encountered. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in evaluating habitat data will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This SOP document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Forms Used In the Watershed Assessment Branch

The forms used by the Watershed Assessment Branch (WAB) are available internally via the WVDEP computer network at:

Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\Forms\2009 Forms.zip

Chapter III. WATER COLLECTION PROTOCOLS

Section A. Water Quality Sondes: Calibration, Maintenance, & Use

Part 1. Sonde Calibration and Maintenance

The following procedures are an overview of YSI calibration for an YSI 600XL Sonde/650 MDS display combination and Hydrolab Quanta G. Consult the owner's manuals for specifics or information on configurations other than these and for details on maintenance and trouble-shooting. These procedures assume the user has a basic knowledge of the instrument.

These directions are not intended for first-time users. Individuals with no prior experience should calibrate with the assistance of an experienced user.

All calibration adjustments are documented in a permanent logbook. The date and time of calibration, name of the calibrator, the identification number of the unit, battery voltage and all adjustments/maintenance must be documented.

Note: Rinsing the probe is a procedure that is frequently performed during calibration. To rinse the probe, install the calibration cup (which is the same as the storage cup on YSI and Quanta G sondes) and add about 1/2 cup of rinse solution, as specified in the directions (usually deionized water). Seal the open end of the calibration cup with the screw cap or rubber lid and shake the probe for 30 seconds. Discard rinse water and repeat according to directions.

All calibrations are performed with the probes in the pointing upward and at temperatures as close to room temperature as possible (25⁰C).

YSI 600XL Sonde/650 MDS Display Unit Calibration

These directions are very similar to the older Scout 2 Hydrolab and newer Quanta G directions. However, individuals with no prior experience should calibrate with the assistance of an experienced user.

YSI Display Unit

The YSI display unit uses a series of escapable menus in conjunction with several keys in the calibration process. Become familiar with the **Enter** key (which looks like a left arrow), escape, scroll, and alpha-numeric keys as these will be the most often used.

Maintenance of YSI Display Unit

The YSI display unit runs on a 4 alkaline C-cell battery system contained within the display unit. The battery power left is displayed on the screen.

Also of importance is the fact that the results of calibration for YSI units are stored in the sonde itself, not in the display unit. Switching the sonde and display units will not affect calibration. This may be especially helpful as one can calibrate several sondes with only one display unit as others may be recharging.

The display unit also features a Date/Time and an auto-shutoff function, which may be modified by selecting "System Setup" in the main menu and then selecting the appropriate function to modify.

2) Dissolved Oxygen

A) DO Probe Calibration

Note: With some of the newer sondes (2004-Present), you need to run the sonde just as if it was in the stream to get the initial or pre-calibration DO readings and then go thru the following steps to calibrate DO and get the post-calibration readings.

1. Remove the threaded lid to the calibration cup. Unlike the Hydrolab sondes, it is not necessary to dry the membrane on the D.O. probe by blotting it with a soft cloth or tissue, but rather only make sure that the membrane is **not inundated with water. In fact, YSI recommends against touching DO membranes when replacing or servicing them. There is a potential for oils or dirt to affect O₂ diffusion through the membrane.** Also, check the membrane for wrinkles, tears, bubbles, dirt, etc. and replace membrane, if necessary.
2. Reattach the calibration cup to the sonde and add no more than 1/8-inch of DI water. Try not pour water on the membrane, but if it does get wet, just make sure that the membrane is not totally inundated with water. Make certain that the DO and Temperature probes are not immersed in water.
3. Cover the calibration cup with the lid and engage only 1 or 2 threads.
4. Let the unit sit for about 10 minutes so that the air inside the cup will saturate with water and come to thermal equilibrium.

Note: If the sonde is from a newer manufacture year (2004-Present), you may need to do one-time adjustment of the sonde settings so that it will

give you the initial or pre-calibration readings before continuing the calibration procedure. The manufacture year can be determined by reading the first two digits of the sonde's serial number (e.g., 04=2004). If this is the case, this can be fixed by deactivating the Autosleep RS232 function in the following section of the menu: **Sonde Menu > Advanced > Setup > Auto sleep RS232**. Toggle the function off by pressing the enter button.

5. Turn on the unit and use the **Up** or **Down** keys to scroll to "Sonde Menu" and press **Enter**. Select "Calibrate" and press **Enter**.
6. Scroll to select "Dissolved Oxy" and press **Enter**.
7. Select "DO %", press **Enter**. One must keep in mind that this is actually calibrating based on O₂ air saturation, not water saturation.
8. Type in the Barometric Pressure displayed by the unit in the bottom right of the screen using the alpha-numeric pad; press **Enter**. Wait for both temperature and DO readings to stabilize; this may take up to 40 seconds (after waiting the initial 10 minutes for water vapor equilibration in the cup). The upper right of the screen should have the word "Calibrate". Record the initial or pre-calibration DO, temperature, and % air saturation in logbook. If the upper right of the screen has the word "Continue" instead of "Calibrate" then calibration has already occurred and the readings given are the final or post-calibration readings. This can be avoided for future calibrations by deactivating the Autosleep RS232 function in the following section of the menu: **Sonde Menu > Advanced > Setup > Auto sleep RS232**. Toggle the function off by pressing the enter button. This will permanently allow the initial or pre-calibration readings will be available prior to calibration.
9. Press **Enter** to finish calibration. Record the final or calibrated DO and % air saturation in log book.
10. The final % air saturation should be within the range of 98% air saturation at the lowest WV elevations to 83% at the highest WV elevations (+/- 2 %). The probe should typically not read above 100% air saturation as this only occurs at sea level. A 100% reading may also be caused at low WV elevations by a high-pressure front or unusual weather in the area. Consult the attached sheet for air saturation values that should be found a different elevations or Appendix D (page 227) from the YSI operating manual (*see Table 8 below*). YSI probes may be calibrated at lower elevations and then brought to a higher elevations and still be accurate. However, calibration at an extreme elevation and transport to a lower

elevation may require a recalibration at the lower elevation. If the barometer reading is extremely unusual for your local elevation, the internal barometer may require recalibration in the lab by a person familiar with that procedure.

11. The upper right of the screen will say "Continue". Press **Enter**. And it will take you back to the DO Calibration Menu.

Table 8. From Appendix D Table 2 of the YSI operating manual (page 227)

Pressure (mm Hg)	Altitude (ft)	Expected % Saturation (+/- 2 %)
760	0	100
752	278	99
745	558	98
737	841	97
730	1126	96
722	1413	95
714	1703	94
707	1995	93
699	2290	92
692	2587	91
684	2887	90
676	3190	89
669	3496	88
661	3804	87
654	4115	86
646	4430	85
638	4747	84
631	5067	83

Elevation at Harpers Ferry=249 ft and at Spruce Knob=4862 ft.

B) DO Probe Maintenance

The membrane on the DO probe should be examined for fouling and bubbles before calibration and during use. If the membrane is torn, dirty or wrinkled, or if there are bubbles under the membrane, the membrane must be replaced. YSI recommends the membrane be replaced at least every 30 days. **The membrane should be replaced 24 hours before use or calibration to allow time for the new membrane to relax. If, in an emergency, a DO probe must be used before the complete 24 hour relaxation period has lapsed, a minimum of 30 minutes must elapse prior to use. In addition, significant drift in its response should be expected due to shifting tension in the membrane. Therefore, the probe should be calibrated every hour it is used until the full 24 hour relaxation period has passed. For most TMDL and other short-duration sampling events, this means the user will most likely need to recalibrate the DO probe before every site.**

To replace the membrane, remove the O-ring and old membrane and shake the remaining electrolyte (KCl solution) out of the probe. New KCl is available as an undissolved solid pre-aliquoted in a bottle and provided with each new DO probe or in an YSI maintenance kit. This bottle should be filled with deionized water to the **neck** to provide the proper working concentration. Add a few drops of fresh KCl solution to the probe. The tip of the probe should be filled to create a positive meniscus (looks like an "outie"), and should be free of bubbles. Hold new membrane between thumb and probe body. Use your free hand to stretch the membrane up, over, and down the opposite side of the probe. Secure the loose end with your forefinger. Roll the O-ring over the tip of the probe without touching the membrane with your finger. Cut off excess membrane. Document any membrane replacement in the logbook.

Caution: The KCl solution used under the DO membrane is especially corrosive to the electrical contacts on the probes and should not be allowed to contact these electrodes or come in contact anywhere near open probe ports when a probe is being removed or installed.

C) DO Probe Diagnostic

To check the quality of the calibration or diagnose a potential problem with the DO probe, an advanced function called DO charge may be used.

1. Press **Esc** to get the Main Menu.
2. Use the **Up** or **Down** keys to scroll and select "Report".
3. Scroll down and select "Dochrg" and press **Enter**. When this is done, the symbol to the left of "Dochrg" should change from an empty to a black circle.
4. Press **Esc** twice to get the 650 Main Menu. Scroll up to "Sonde Run" and press Enter.
5. A new parameter should be visible on the screen called "DOc". If the probe is in adequate condition and calibrated successfully, the number should range from 25 - 75 with a score of 50 being optimum.
6. If the probe reads in this range, then simply repeat this procedure to turn off the DO charge function (the black circle will change back into an empty circle).

If the DO charge is in the low end of the range or below this range, the KCl solution under the membrane may be contaminated with water. In this case the membrane and solution should be replaced.

If the DO charge is in the high end of the range several things may be wrong. First, the highly malleable Au electrode may be distorted or the silver-plating on the electrode may be “tarnished” and gray looking. In this case, the electrode may be reconditioned by buffing it using one of the **YSI provided buffing discs only**. THIS SHOULD ALSO BE DONE ONLY WITH STRICT ADHERENCE TO THE DIRECTIONS PROVIDED IN THE MANUAL FOR USING THIS BUFFING DISC ON THE PROBE SURFACE. IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO CONSULT WITH AN YSI REPRESENTATIVE BEFORE ATTEMPTING THIS ACTION. **YSI recommends running newly-buffed probes for 10-15 minutes continuously to realize good stability.**

A second possible cause of a high DO charge reading are cracks around the electrodes as a result of drying and rewetting of the surface. If this is the case, then the DO probe may need to be replaced.

YSI's 6562 Clark cell DO probes have an expected lifetime of 3-5 years from the date of manufacture. The date of manufacture is stamped on the side of the probe in the form of a 3-character code where the first two numeric digits indicate the year and the third character is a letter corresponding to the month (A = January, B = February and so on). If the probe has passed its expected lifetime, it may simply be too old to give proper calibration and readings.

D) DO Probe Accuracy

The DO probe accuracy is +/- 0.2 mg/L (or ppm) O₂ or 2% of the reading (whichever is greater). The range for % saturation is or +/- 2 % or the reading or Air Saturation (whichever is greater).

3) Conductivity

A) Conductivity Probe Calibration

1. Remove the lid on the calibration cup and use the special brush designed to fit inside the conductivity probe's 2 end ports, vigorously scrub each port 5-10 times.
2. Rinse the probe 3 times with deionized water.
3. Rinse the probe 2 times with a small amount of **fresh** conductivity standard in the **1000-5000** microSiemens or μS (also known as

micromhos or $\mu\text{mhos/cm}$) range. (The exact concentration of the standard will be written on the bottle.)

4. Fill cup with conductivity standard to within a centimeter of the top of the cup. Make sure that there are no bubbles in the measurement cell of the specific conductance sensor (e.g. gently inverting the sonde several times). Record the concentration of standard used to calibrate in the logbook.
5. Press **Escape**. Scroll to **conductivity**; press **Enter**.
6. Scroll to **SpCond**; press **Enter**.
7. Type in concentration of standard in milliSiemens (not microSiemens). 5000 microSiemens = 5.000 milliSiemens. Press **Enter**.
8. Allow the reading to stabilize, (a maximum of one minute, though the conductance probe response time is usually the fastest of all probes). Record the initial or pre-calibration readout in logbook. Press **Enter** to calibrate and record the final or calibrated readout in logbook. Press **Enter** again to continue back to the conductivity menu.
9. Now, after at least 3 rinses with deionized water, exit from the calibration menu, enter the discrete sampling mode (Sonde Run from the main menu), and take a specific conductance reading in a solution of known specific conductance less than 1000 microSiemens. This second point is a check only, not a calibration. For most checks, this will simply be distilled or deionized water (expected conductance should be < 4 microSiemens). However, in some cases a 2nd conductivity standard, of 500 microSiemens for example, will be available.

B) Conductivity Probe Maintenance

The openings that allow fluids to access the conductivity electrodes should be cleaned regularly (once a month at most) using the small acrylic brush included in the YSI calibration kit. Dip the brush in clean water and insert it into each hole 20-30 times. A mild detergent may be used with the brush, if deposits have formed on the electrodes.

C) Conductivity Probe Diagnostic

The conductivity probe on an YSI sonde can be checked using a function called Cal Constants.

1. Press **Esc** to get the Main Menu.

2. Scroll down and select "Advanced" and press **Enter**.
3. Scroll down and select "Cal Constants" and press **Enter**. The reading next to the "Cond:" should range from 4.5 – 5.5. IF THE READING IS NOT WITHIN THIS RANGE CONSULT THE YSI OPERATION MANUAL OR AN YSI REPRESENTATIVE.
4. To escape from this screen, press Esc repeatedly until the Main Menu appears.

YSI's Temperature/Conductivity probes have an expected lifetime of 2-3 years from the date of manufacture. The date of manufacture is stamped on the side of the probe in the form of a 3-character code where the first two numeric digits indicate the year and the third character is a letter corresponding to the month (A = January, B = February and so on). If the probe has passed its expected lifetime, it may simply be too old to give proper calibration and readings.

D) Conductivity Probe Accuracy

The Conductivity probe accuracy is +/- 0.5% +/- 1 uS/cm. For example, a solution that is 1000 microSiemens, the range would be 1000 x 0.005 +/- 1 microSiemen or 5 +/- 1 microSiemen.

4) pH

A) pH Probe Calibration (a three-point style calibration)

1. Press **Escape** to get to Calibration mode.
2. Rinse probe three times with DI water.
3. Scroll down to **ISE1 pH**; press **Enter**.
4. Scroll down to **3 Point**; press **Enter**.
5. Rinse probe twice with DI water and once with 7.0 buffer solution.
6. Fill calibration cup with 7.0 buffer solution to within a centimeter of the top of the cup.

7. Because the exact pH of a buffer varies (depending on its constituents) with its temperature, a table provided by the manufacturer must be used to determine the exact current pH of the buffer solution. **Refer to Figure 3 below or the chart hanging in the lab for the exact pH of a given buffer solution at the current temperature of the room.**

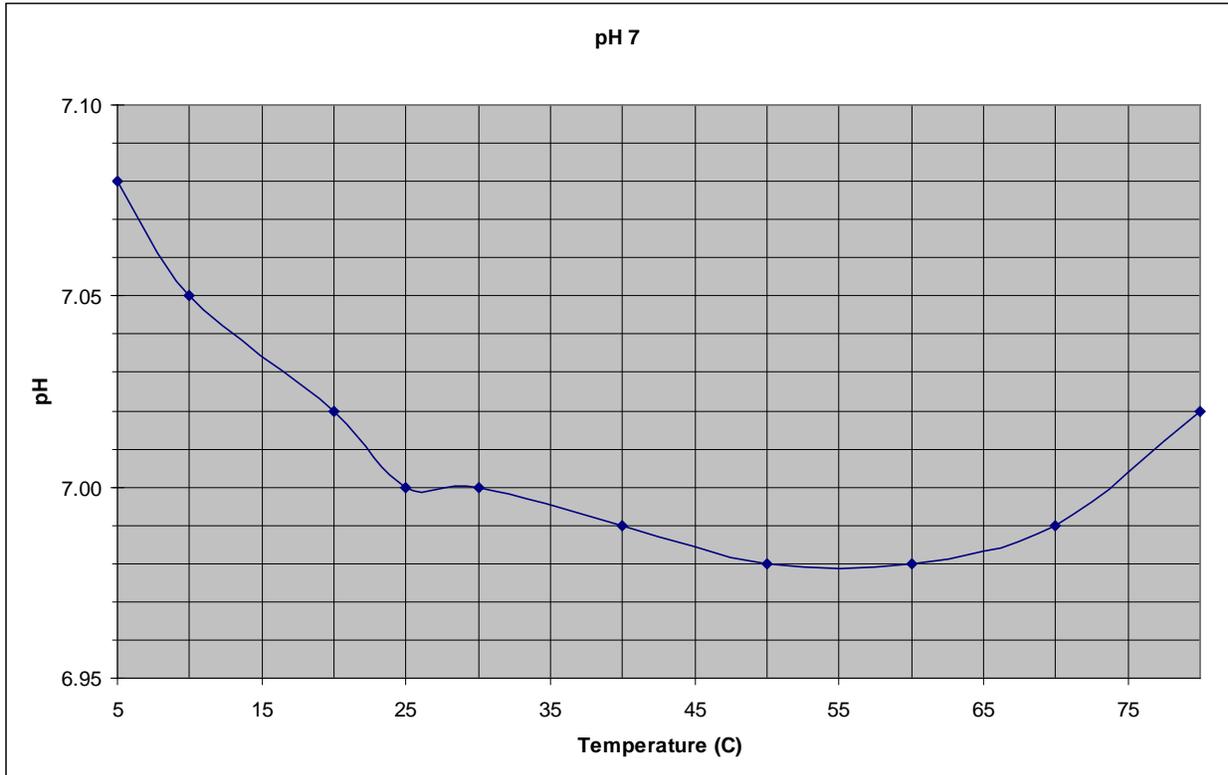


Figure 3. Temperature/pH curve for pH 7 Buffer Solution

8. Type in the exact pH for the 7.00 buffer solution for the current temperature; press **Enter**. Allow readout to stabilize (approximately one minute).
9. Record the initial or pre-calibration readout. Press **Enter** to calibrate.
10. Record the final or calibration readout and press **Enter** again.
11. Rinse probe 2 times with deionized water and once with pH 10.00 buffer solution.
12. Fill calibration cup with 10.00 buffer solution to within a centimeter of the top of the cup.

13. Determine the exact current pH of the 10.00 buffer solution from the table provided by the manufacturer or in **Figure 4 below** as in Step 7 above.

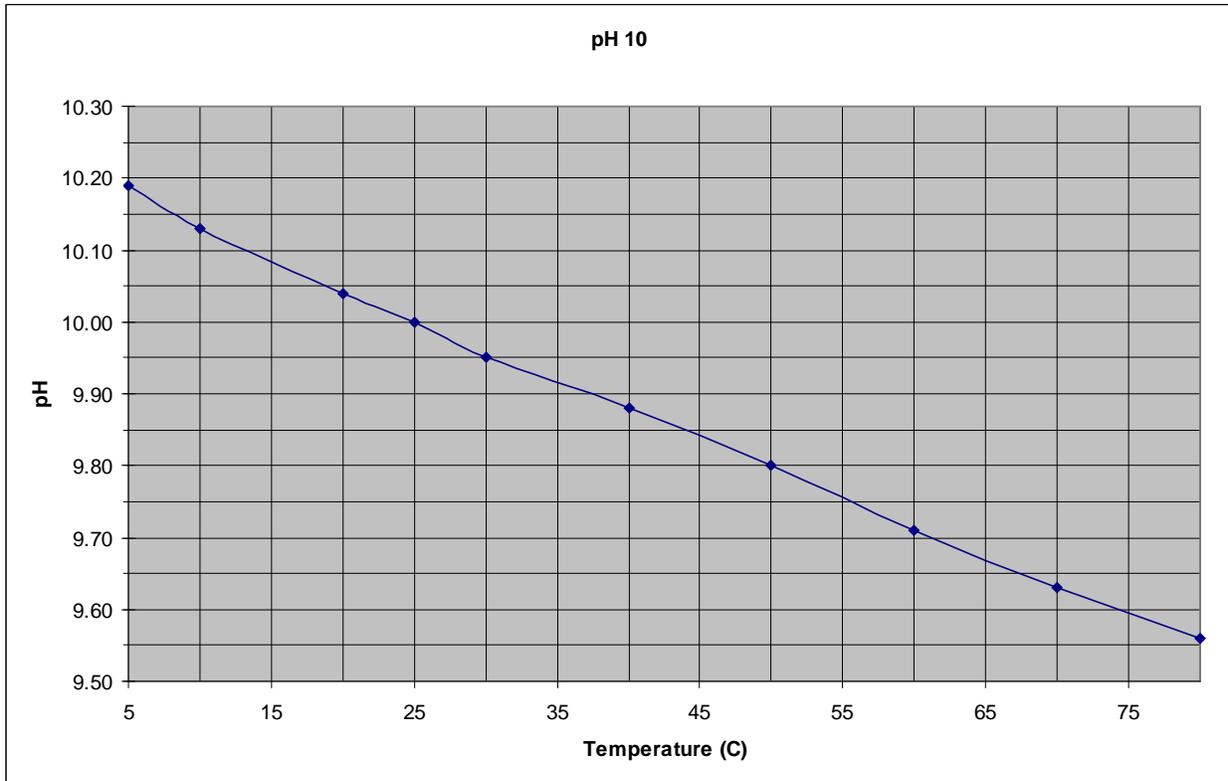


Figure 4. Temperature/pH curve for pH 10 Buffer Solution

14. Type in the exact pH for the 10.00 buffer solution given the current room temperature; press **Enter**. Allow readout to stabilize (approximately one minute).
15. Record the initial or pre-calibration readout; press **Enter** to calibrate.
16. Record the final or calibration readout and press **Enter** again.
17. Rinse probe 2 times with deionized water and once with pH 4.00 buffer solution.
18. Fill calibration cup with 4.00 buffer solution to within a centimeter of the top of the cup.

19. Determine the exact current pH of the 4.00 buffer solution from the table provided by the manufacturer or in **Figure 5 below** as in Step 7 above.

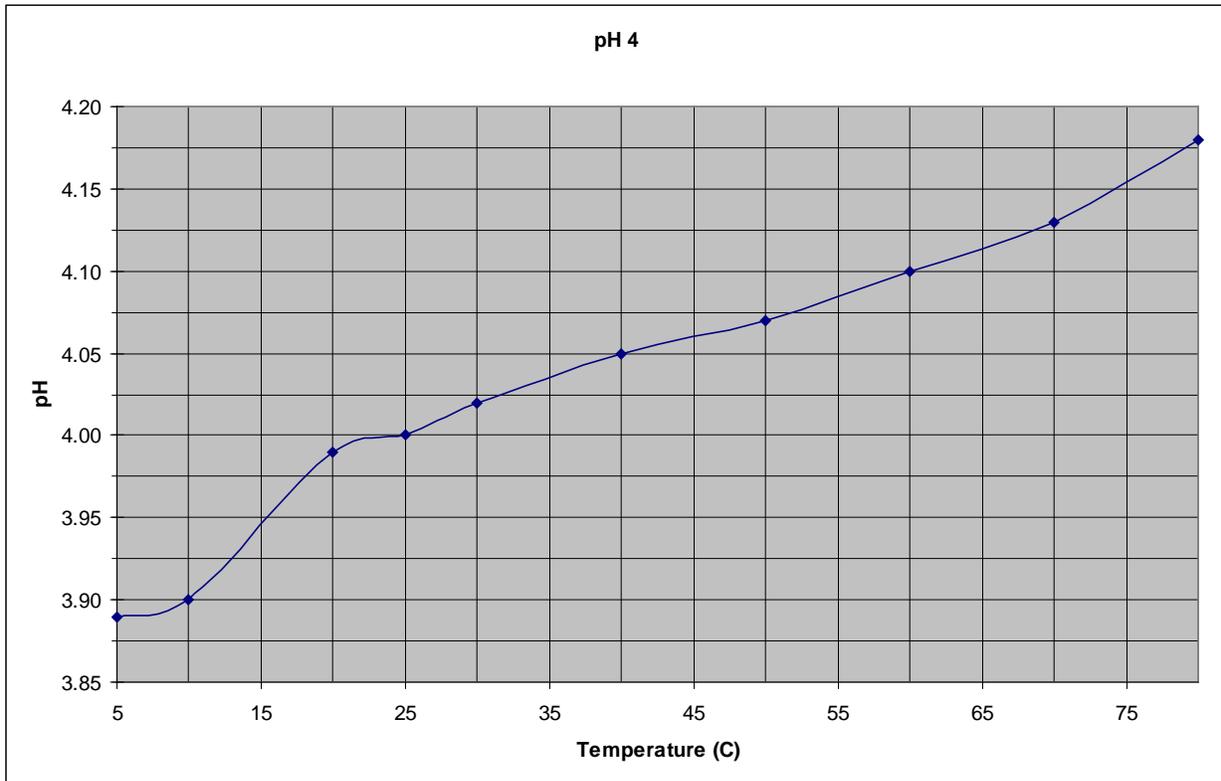


Figure 5. Temperature/pH curve for pH 4 Buffer Solution

20. Type in exact pH for the 4.00 buffer solution given the current room temperature; press **Enter**. Allow reading to stabilize (approximately one minute).
21. Record the initial or pre-calibration readout; press **Enter** to calibrate. Record the final or calibrated readout. Press enter to return to the pH calibration menu.
22. Pour out some of the 4.00 buffer solution from the calibration cup, leaving some behind to keep the air inside the cup moist. Preferably, the sonde should always be stored in some sort of high ionic solution (such as the pH buffer solutions) as this will prevent leaching of ions from the pH probe and prevent degradation to the probe's expected lifespan. Should you spill the buffer out of the calibration cup while in the field, add an *extremely small* amount of stream water (just enough to keep the air inside the cup moist) to the storage cup. **THE WATER SHOULD NOT COVER THE PH OR DO PROBE WHEN THE SONDE IS HORIZONTAL.**

This water should be replaced by buffer solution as soon as possible to prevent the aforementioned degradation of the pH probe.

B) Probe Maintenance and Troubleshooting

Sometimes slow response times or instability with the values (jumping as much as +/- 1.0 unit during calibration or field measurements) are observed with the pH readings. This may be caused by a number of factors and may or may not be indicative of a bad probe.

One consideration is the age of the probe. YSI's pH probes have an expected use lifetime of about 18 months. The date of manufacture is stamped on the side of the probe in the form of a 3-character code where the first two numeric digits indicate the year and the third character is a letter corresponding to the month (A = January, B = February and so on). If the probe is 18 months or older, then it is likely that it has passed its expected lifetime and it may simply be too old to give proper calibration and readings.

Another factor to consider is the temperature probe. The calculation of the pH by the sonde is a temperature dependent calculation. If the temperature probe is malfunctioning, then it may appear as if the pH probe isn't working right. Be sure to check the temperature to see if it returning a reasonable value. If it is not, then the temperature/conductivity probe may need to be replaced.

Water or sealant grease can also get in the connector when replacing a probe and can cause malfunctions and erratic readings. When replacing a pH probe, dry off the probe and sonde as much as you can before removing the probe to make sure water doesn't enter the fitting. Also, remove the pH probe with the sonde upside down so that water cannot run into the connections. Once removed, look inside the connector end of the probe and sonde to see if there is any water or grease in the fitting. If so, remove it with a can of compressed air and/or a paper towel. The important thing is to dry it out as much as possible. If there is excessive grease, then try to remove it with a towel. If the grease cannot be removed, an YSI maintenance expert may need to use a solvent for to break up the grease. Once dry, reconnect the probe using very little grease around the upper O-ring near the threads. A very thin coat making the O-ring look wet is sufficient for a proper seal.

Cleaning is required when response becomes slow or when deposits build up on the surfaces. To clean the glass bulb, remove the probe and use a soft cloth or tissue to wipe foreign material from the glass bulb and platinum button. Then use a moisten cotton swab to GENTLY remove any material

blocking the reference electrode junction. DO NOT WEDGE THE SWAB TIP BETWEEN THE GUARD AND THE GLASS SENSOR.

If response is still slow, soak the probe 10-15 minutes in clean water containing dishwashing liquid. Then wipe the probes gently with a cotton swab moistened with the cleaning liquid. Rinse in clean water, wipe once more with a clean swab and rinse again.

If response times continue to be slow, the probe may be cleaned in a 1:1 chlorine bleach solution for 1 hour. YSI recommends this procedure ever 6 – 12 months if the probe does not work well. This is usually as result of extreme conditions in which fouling of the probe is more probable.

Finally, if the probe still does not respond well, it may be soaked in one molar HCl for 30-60 minutes. THIS SHOULD BE USED AS A LAST RESORT METHOD ONLY. REFER TO THE YSI OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL FOR DETAILS ON THESE PROCEDURES OR CONSULT AN YSI REPRESENTATIVE.

C) pH Probe Diagnostic (Nernst Equation Calculation)

The pH probe on an YSI sonde operates using the Nernst Equation (**see Figure 6 below**). Simply put, a line running from 4 to 7 (or 7 to 10) pH on the x-axis should increase 180 mV (or 60 mV/pH unit) from 7 to 4 or (decrease 180 mV from 7 to 10) pH on the y-axis. See illustration below. If this slope flattens, the pH probe will lose resolution. This slope is a result of the probe condition as well as the quality of the calibration. A function called pH mV may be used to check this slope.

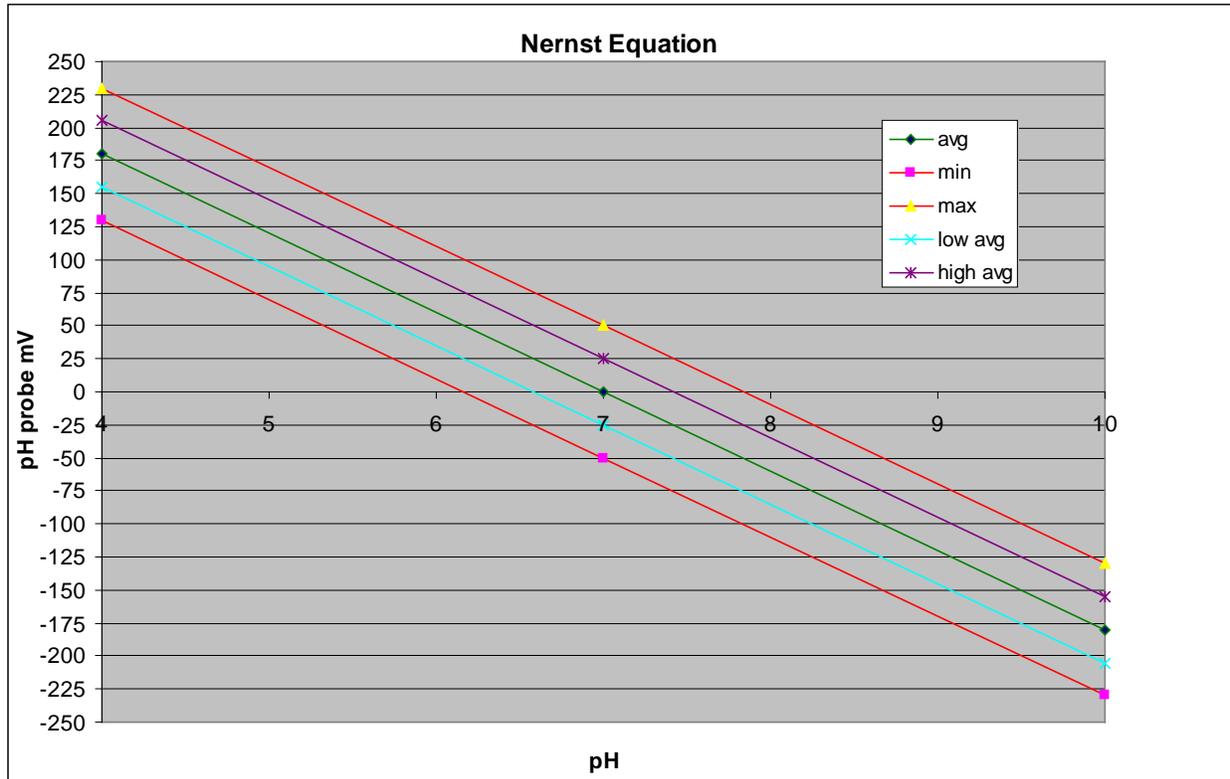


Figure 6. The Nernst Equation

Equation 1. The Nernst Equation

The Nernst Equation may be calculated by following these steps:

1. Press **Esc** to get the Main Menu.
2. Use the **Up** or **Down** keys to scroll to Report and press Enter.
3. Scroll down and select “pH mV” and press **Enter**. When this is done, the symbol to the left of “pH mV” should change from an empty to a black circle.
4. Press **Esc** twice to get the 650 Main Menu. Scroll up to “Sonde Run” and press Enter.
5. A new, second parameter called “pH mV” should be visible on the screen that reads well beyond 14 and may be positive or negative.
6. Use the rinse procedures from the pH calibration above to introduce the 7.00 buffer solution to the probe. Write down the second “pH” reading for the 7.00 buffer solution. It should be between –40 and 40, but may be

slightly more (-50 to 50). The reading should stabilize within the aforementioned values in less than 30 seconds.

7. Repeat the rinse procedures for either 4.00 or 10.00 buffer solution. For either solution, the new reading should have a difference of 180 from the initial 7.00 buffer solution reading.

For example, if an initial reading at 7.00 was -20.0, then the second reading at 4.00 should be around 160 (+/- 40) or, if using 10.00, the second reading should be around -200 (+/- 40).

8. If the probe reads in this range within 30 seconds, then the probe is ok and simply repeat this procedure to turn off the pH mV function (the black circle will change back into a -). If the probe reads outside this range or takes longer than 30 seconds, two things may be wrong. First, the calibration may be off and the calibration procedure should be repeated to check for this. Unfortunately, if recalibration does not correct the problem, this is an indication that the KCl solution inside the probe is contaminated with water and the whole probe will need to be replaced. **See**
9. **YSI Sonde Storage *below for prevention of contamination of the KCl solution inside the pH probe.***

D) pH Probe Accuracy

The pH probe accuracy is +/- 0.2 pH units (*i.e.*, 6.8-7.2 is an acceptable reading for 7.0 buffer solution).

5) Temperature

Temperature Probe Accuracy

The Temperature probe accuracy is +/- 0.15⁰ C.

YSI Sonde Storage

The pH probe on an YSI sonde operates using a polypropylene wick from the water (or sampling) side to a concentrated KCl side sealed inside the probe. To increase the life of a probe, proper storage of the probe must be implemented.

If the probe is being stored for a **short period of time**, place only a minute amount of water (1/8th of an inch is probably too much) in the cup for storage making sure that no water will inundate the pH probe. The other probes (*e.g.*, the DO probe) require only moist air to maintain proper function. A small damp sponge inside the cup would be adequate for such storage.

For **long-term storage** (*e.g.*, over winter), it is recommended that the cup be filled with a concentrated KCl solution. This will lengthen the life of the probe and help maintain

the concentration of KCl inside of the pH probe. TO OBTAIN THE CONCENTRATION OF KCL SOLUTION, CONSULT THE YSI OPERATING MANUAL OR AN YSI REPRESENTATIVE.

Hydrolab Quanta G Calibration

These directions are very similar to the older Scout 2 Hydrolab directions. However, individuals with no prior experience should calibrate with the assistance of an experienced user.

1) Quanta G Display Unit

The Quanta G display unit uses a series of escapable menus in conjunction with several keys in the calibration process. Become familiar with the Enter key (which looks like a left arrow with a right angle), escape (Esc ∞), on/off (O | I), and arrow keys as these will be the most often used.

Maintenance of Quanta G Display

The Quanta G runs on 3 C batteries. Replace the C batteries as required. The Quanta G System provides at least 15 hours of continuous operation on one set of new batteries. A Battery Low icon will show the battery status

2) Dissolved Oxygen

A) DO Probe Calibration

1. Remove calibration cup from probe and dry the membrane by blotting with a soft cloth or tissue. Check the membrane for wrinkles, tears, bubbles, dirt, etc. and replace membrane, if necessary.
2. Attach calibration cup to the Quanta and fill cup with room temperature tap water until the water surface is just level with O-ring on the D.O. probe. Do not pour water on the membrane. If the membrane gets wet, blot dry with a soft cloth or tissue.
3. Cover the calibration cup loosely using the black calibration cup cover placed upside down on the calibration cup.
4. Let the unit sit for about 10 minutes so that the air inside the cup will saturate with water.
5. Turn on the Quanta G using the **O | I** key and allow the D.O. reading to stabilize. If the circulator is on, press the **Esc ∞** key to toggle the circulator off so that it doesn't splash the water in the cup onto the membrane. Record the initial or pre-calibration readings (mg/L) into the logbook. Also record the initial readout for temperature.

6. Press the **enter** key to toggle to the next screen and record the initial or pre-calibration % DO saturation in the logbook.
7. After power-up the Display's "Screen" icon in the lower center of the screen is blinking. Press either of the **arrow** keys to cause the "Calib" icon to blink instead of "Screen". Press the **enter** key to select calibration. Use the **arrow** keys to cause "DO" to blink and then press the **enter** key.
8. Determine the barometric pressure for entry as the calibration standard and record in the logbook. *Use the local barometric pressure. Many local weather bureaus correct the barometric pressure to sea level. Consult the operating manual for formulas to convert from sea level barometric pressure to local barometric pressure.*
9. Press the **arrow** keys to raise or lower the barometric pressure to match the calibration standard.
10. Press the **enter** key to finish calibration of Dissolved Oxygen. If the unit rejects the calibration, the display will show "FAIL" before returning to the "Calib" screen.
11. Press the **Esc** ∞ key to return to the real-time data screen. Record the final or post-calibration D.O. readings into the logbook. Press the **enter** key to toggle to the next screen and record the final or post-calibration % DO saturation in the logbook.

B) DO Probe Maintenance

If the D.O. will not calibrate, the membrane may be torn, wrinkled, dirty, damaged, or a bubble may be trapped in the probe. The membrane should be replaced whenever these conditions are observed. Frequent replacement of membranes can also lengthen the life of the probe.

To change the membrane, remove the calibration cup. Remove the O-ring that holds the membrane on the probe. Shake out the old electrolyte solution, rinse the probe with electrolyte solution, and refill with fresh electrolyte until a positive meniscus rises above the probe surface. Make sure there are no bubbles in the probe. Install the new membrane (don't stretch the membrane while doing this), and replace the O-ring. If possible allow the probe to soak overnight in tap water to acclimate to its new shape.

C) DO Probe Accuracy

The DO probe accuracy is +/- 0.2 mg/L (or ppm) O₂ at ≤ 20 mg/L or +/- 0.6 mg/L (or ppm) O₂ at >20 mg/L.

3) ConductivityA) Conductivity Probe Calibration

1. Remove the lid on the calibration cup and rinse the probe 3 times with deionized water.
2. Rinse the probe 2 times with a small amount of conductivity standard in the **1000-5000** microSiemens range. (The exact concentration of the standard will be written on the bottle.).
3. Fill cup with conductivity standard to within a centimeter of the top of the cup. Make sure that there are no bubbles in the measurement cell of the specific conductance sensor. Wait for the readings to stabilize. Record the concentration of calibration standard used and the initial or pre-calibration specific conductance readings in the logbook.
4. Press either of the **arrow** keys to cause the “Calib” icon to blink instead of “Screen”. Press the **enter** key to select calibration. Use the **arrow** keys to cause “SpC” to blink and the press the **enter** key.
5. Press the **arrow** keys to raise or lower the specific conductance to match the calibration standard in mS/cm.
6. Press the **enter** key to finish calibration of specific conductance. If the unit rejects the calibration, the display will show “FAIL” before returning to the “Calib” screen
7. Press the **Esc** ∞ key to return to the real-time data screen. Record the final or post-calibration specific conductance readings into the logbook.
8. To check with a lower conductivity standard, repeat steps 1-3 with the lower standard.

B) Conductivity Probe Maintenance

Clean the oval measurement cell on the specific conductance sensor with a small, non-abrasive brush or cotton swab. Soap or rubbing alcohol may be used to remove grease, oil, or biological material. Rinse with water.

C) Conductivity Probe Accuracy

The Conductivity probe accuracy is +/- 1% +/- 1 uS/cm. For example, a solution that is 1000 MicroSiemens, the range would be 1000 x 0.01 +/- 1 MicroSiemen or 10 +/- 1 MicroSiemen.

4) pHA) pH Probe Calibration (a two-point style calibration)

1. Rinse the probe 3 times with deionized water.
2. Rinse the probe 2 times with a small amount of the 7.0 pH standard.
3. Fill cup with 7.0 pH standard to within a centimeter of the top of the cup. Wait for the readings to stabilize. Record initial or pre-calibration specific conductance readings in the logbook.
4. Press either of the **arrow** keys to cause the "Calib" icon to blink instead of "Screen". Press the **enter** key to select calibration. Use the **arrow** keys to cause "pH" to blink and then press the **enter** key.
5. Press the **arrow** keys to raise or lower the pH to match the calibration standard for the given room temperature (**See Figure 3 above under YSI 600XL Sonde/650 MDS Display Unit Calibration 4) pH**).
6. Press the **enter** key to finish calibration of pH. If the unit rejects the calibration, the display will show "FAIL" before returning to the "Calib" screen
7. Press the **Esc** ∞ key to return to the real-time data screen. Record the final or post-calibration pH readings into the logbook.
8. Repeat steps 1-7 for the second pH standard. This pH standard will depend on the types of streams that will be encountered. Use the 4.0 pH buffer if mainly acid streams will be encountered and use the 10.0 pH buffer if mainly alkaline streams will be encountered. The calibration standards exact pH at the given temperature can be found in **Figure 4** and **Figure 5 (See above under YSI 600XL Sonde/650 MDS Display Unit Calibration 4) pH**).
9. When finished with the second pH standard, add a very small amount of tap water (just enough to keep the air inside the cup moist) to the storage cup. THE STORAGE WATER SHOULD NOT COVER THE PH OR DO PROBE WHEN THE SONDE IS HORIZONTAL.

B) pH Probe Maintenance

Two electrodes are used to measure pH: a glass pH probe and a reference electrode enclosed in a reference sleeve. If the response time for pH seems slow, refer the owner's manual for cleaning instructions.

Glass pH probe: Little maintenance is required. Check the tip of the probe to make sure the glass is not broken or dirty. If the pH sensor is obviously coated with oil, sediment, or biological growth, clean the glass with a very clean, soft, non-scratching cloth wet with rubbing alcohol (a cotton ball will do). Rinse with tap water.

Reference electrode: Gently pull the reference sleeve away from the probe. The reference sleeve is the black tube with a porous Teflon Reference Junction attached. Discard the old electrolyte from the reference sleeve. Refill the sleeve to the top with reference electrolyte. With the probe pointed toward the floor, push the full reference sleeve back onto its mount until the sleeve has just covered the first o-ring located on the mount (just behind the silver electrode). Turn the probe so that the sensors point toward the ceiling and push the sleeve the rest of the way onto its mount. Rinse with tap water. The porous Teflon Reference Junction is the most important part of the pH performance. Make sure it is clean and passes electrolyte readily. If not, replace it. When seating the reference sleeve, trapped air and excess electrolyte is purged. This purging flushes and cleans the porous Teflon Reference Junction.

C) Conductivity Probe Accuracy

The pH probe accuracy is +/- 0.2 pH units (*i.e.*, 6.8-7.2 is an acceptable reading for 7.0 buffer solution).

5) Temperature

Conductivity Probe Accuracy

The Temperature probe accuracy is +/- 0.2⁰ C.

Quanta G Probe Storage

When not in use, the H₂O should be stored with the storage cup containing about ½ inch of tap water. In an emergency, the cup can be filled with ½ inch of clean creek water. The creek water should be replaced with tap water when you return to the lab. The pH reference electrode should also be stored in saturated KCl solution under the plastic cap.

Part 2. Field Procedures

The readings from a water quality sonde are often referred to as instantaneous readings as they are taken immediately and directly from the water column.

While weekly calibration should be adequate to take care of the majority of the probes, the DO probe should be calibrated daily. In some cases, when travel to sites are greatly varying elevations, DO should be calibrated in each new elevation.

In the case of the Hydrolab Quanta, the pH should be recalibrated if the pH regime of the stream changes (*i.e.*, the Quanta was calibrated for 4.0 to 7.0 and the streams you are sampling are above 7.0 pH).

Setting up the Water Quality Sample Site

1. Attempt to locate a good sampling location with adequate depth and flow near mid-stream. If mid-stream is not available due to high flows or deep water, you may take deploy the sonde from the bank if you are sure that there is no plumes from pollution sources or tributaries that may be flowing along either bank. Additionally, if the cord of your sonde is long enough, you could attempt to deploy the sonde from a bridge. Another alternative is to deploy the sonde into a proxy like a bucket or sample tube that was lowered off of a bridge to collect water. In any case, be sure to document where and how you sampled on the habitat form. **IF YOU ARE COLLECTING WATER FOR ANALYSIS AT A LAB, DIRECTLY FROM THE STREAM, YOU MUST PLACE THE SONDE IN THE SAME FLOW VECTOR AS THE WATER SAMPLE COLLECTION.**
2. Remove the calibration cup from the end of the sonde, screw on the deployment guard, and deploy the sonde into the water column. **Be sure to not disturb the substrate above this point until all water data collection is completed.**

Note: When deploying a sonde into the water, give it a little tap or shake once submerged. This will help jar loose any air bubbles inside the conductivity probe that will bias a reading. Make sure that all probes are submerged adequately.

3. Once fully submerged in the water turn the unit on. For YSI, turn on the unit with the power key and press **Enter** twice. For the Hydrolab Quanta, turn on the unit using the **O | I** key. Press the **Esc** ∞ key to toggle the circulator on and off if necessary.

4. Let the readings stabilize for a few minutes. This time could be used to fill out parts of the habitat form, collect water samples, or check on the GPS coordinates.
5. Record the readings onto the habitat form and turn the sonde off. Take off the deployment guard and replace the calibration cup. Always make sure sand and other particles are kept clear of the threads on the sampling weight, cap, storage cup, and sonde itself. These threads are plastic and will strip if sand is caught in the treads while screwing these parts on and off.
6. Store the sonde securely for future use. When storing the sonde between sites or sampling events, only a small amount of 4.0 pH buffer inside the cup is necessary to keep the air (and membranes) moist. If the pH buffer is spilled at the site, you can get away with a few drops of water inside the cup until you can replace it back at a vehicle or the lab. **DO NOT STORE THE SONDE WITH A FULL CUP OF WATER, AS THIS WILL LESSEN THE LIFE OF THE pH PROBE.**

Tips for usage of YSI probes in the field:

- If taking readings from a water sample in a container (e.g., a bucket), make sure to keep the hole on the conductivity probe away from the edges of the container as this may cause stray signals from the probe and result in an inaccurate reading. Also attempt to keep the sample as sealed and isolated as possible to maintain the temperature and DO concentrations. It also may be necessary to swirl the sonde around to keep the water circulating.
- If a DO probe is suspected of being out of calibration, check the DO charge reading as well as the % air saturation. If the air saturation is not within an expected range for your current elevation, recalibration at that elevation may be necessary. It is also possible that the internal barometer needs recalibration (a manufacturer repair).

Sonde Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Before use, each sonde and probe should be examined for wear (e.g., breakage, air bubbles, membrane tears or wrinkles) and adjustments should be made as required.

Calibration logbooks are maintained for each instrument and entered into a database. Any instrument failing to meet calibration requirements is repaired in house or shipped to the manufacturer. Meters are calibrated weekly, prior to sampling, and are recalibrated in the field, if conditions warrant. For example, if a Hydrolab has been calibrated for pH using the 7 and 10 buffers, recalibration is performed if a stream pH of 3 is encountered. Note that an YSI sonde has a 3-point pH calibration procedure available that is conducted in the lab since streams in the acidic and alkaline ranges are

often both encountered during the course of a week of sampling. D. O. is calibrated daily. In addition, all sondes and probes are cross-checked against each other monthly for accuracy and stabilization speed.

Each meter has an identification number, which is recorded on the habitat assessment sheet each time the meter is used. Should any instrument fail to calibrate, readings taken prior to the failed calibration will be examined for reliability and accuracy. Documentation of the instrument used at each site will help to keep data loss to a minimum. All repairs to sondes and probes are documented in a repair log including the serial numbers and manufacture dates of any replacement probes.

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with habitat sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the calibration, maintenance, and collection of water quality sonde data is included. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in using water quality sondes will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results before they are allowed to use the sondes solo. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Section B. Water Quality Sample Collection and Preservation

The water quality monitoring is the centerpiece of the Watershed Assessment Branch's (WAB) efforts to assess streams. It is extremely important that all of these methods are followed to maintain comparability between samplers and sampling events.

Materials and Reagents

1. "Analysis Request Form" - for sample identification and tracking, and maintaining chain-of-custody.
2. Waterproof pen or sharpie - for labeling sample bottles.
3. Sterile Fecal bottles with Sodium thiosulfate tablet - for collecting bacteria samples.
4. Plastic Bottles (Cubitainers with Lids) - for collecting other water quality samples, except phenols.
5. Cooler - for sample preservation.
6. Ice - for sample preservation.
7. Fixatives (nitric acid, sulfuric acid, and sodium hydroxide) - for sample preservation.
8. Waterproof plastic bags or other suitable container - for holding bacteria sample bottles during transport.
9. Filtration Apparatus (either Peristaltic or Vacuum type) – for sample preservation.

Safety Precautions

Rubber gloves and protective eyewear should be worn during sample collection to avoid bacterial contamination and for personal health protection as many streams may have sharp objects embedded in the substrate (e.g., glass, metal, wire, etc.). They should also be worn during sample preservation or at any time while handling the fixatives, which are concentrated acids. Bottles containing fixatives should be stably seated inside a lidded container to prevent breakage and leakage.

WARNING!! SOME FIXATIVES ARE CORROSIVE AND MAY EMIT TOXIC FUMES. BE SURE TO USE THE APPROPRIATE SAFETY GEAR AND PRESEVE SAMPLES IN A WELL VENTALIATED AREA. DO NOT FIX SAMPLES IN THE VEHICLE, AS ACCIDENTAL SPILLS CAN AND WILL OCCUR.

Do not place liquid acid or base into sample bottles prior to sample collection. Always add fixatives to sample. **NEVER ADD SAMPLE WATER TO LIQUID ACIDS OR BASES, AS A STRONG CHEMICAL REACTION CAN OCCUR.**

Procedures for Collecting Water Quality Samples

1. **Using a permanent ink pen**, fill out an "Analysis Request Form" for each sample site. If the fecal sample will be delivered one laboratory and other samples to another, complete two request forms. The person who actually collected the sample must be the person indicated on the form and the one who signs the chain-of-custody.
2. Label each sample container with a sharpie. The following information must be included: Agency Name (WVDEP/WAB), Stream name, Alpha-numeric code (or station ID), date/time collected, Random # (if applicable) and type of fixative added (if applicable). It is recommended that some additional identifying mark be put on the lids as the sides of the containers can be abraded pretty easy and lose their labels. This additional identifying mark can be the Random # or something as simple as the time of collection.
3. At the selected water quality sampling location, (X-site for random sites), attempt to locate a good sampling location with adequate depth and flow near mid-stream. If mid-stream is not available due to high flows or deep water, you may take the sample from the bank if you are sure that there is no plumes from pollution sources or tributaries that may be flowing along either bank. Be sure to document where you sampled on the habitat form. **Be sure to not disturb the substrate above this point until all water sampling is completed.**

4. Place the water quality sonde downstream in the same flow vector as your sample point and turn it on so that it can begin to take readings (**see Section A.Part 2. Field Procedures for more information on how to use the water quality sonde in the field**).
5. Collect the water samples upstream as follows:
 - A. Fecal Coliform Sample:
 - Use pre-sterilized bottle with Sodium thiosulfate tablet. Keep the bottle closed until you are ready to collect the sample.
 - Open bottle and handle carefully to avoid contamination. **DO NOT TOUCH THE INSIDE OF THE LID OR BOTTLE.**
 - Using a quick dipping motion, fill the bottle to the 100 ml mark. **DO NOT RINSE OR REFILL THE BOTTLE.** If the bottle is too full, slowly pour a little out.
 - Place cap tightly on bottle and secure cap lock.
 - B. Other Water Samples (Cubitainer Samples):
 - All remaining water quality samples are collected in plastic Cubitainers.
 - Rinse the Cubitainer twice with stream water
 - Fill the Cubitainer with sample water and expunge as much of the airspace as possible.
Note: When collecting a sample to be analyzed for Alkalinity (unfixed sample) as much air as possible should be expunged from the sample container to avoid contamination.

Sample Preservation (Fixation, Filtration, & Holding)

Preserve the sample as indicated on the "Analysis Request Form". **Preservation must occur within 15 minutes of sample collection, even if you must pack bags of ice and the filtration equipment in on a 6 mile hike. NO EXCEPTIONS!** *The preservation methods and holding times are summarized in Table 9.*
Preservation Methods and Holding Times

Parameter	Preservation	Max. Holding Time
Fecal Coliform	Cool <10 °C, 0.0008% Na ₂ S ₂ O ₃	6 hours. (24 hours for TMDL/WAB samples)
Acidity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Alkalinity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Ammonia	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chloride	None required	28 days.
Kjeldahl (TKN) and Organic N	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chromium VI	Cool ≤6 °C, pH = 9.3–9.7	28 days.
Mercury (CVAA)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	28 days.
Mercury (CVAFS)	5 mL/L 12N HCl or 5 mL/L BrCl	90 days.
Total Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Dissolved Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	Filtered, HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Nitrate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrite	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrate-Nitrite (NO ₂ -NO ₃ -N)	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Orthophosphate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Dissolved Orthophosphate	Filtered, Cool ≤6 °C	Filter within 15 minutes; 48 hours.
Phosphorous, Total	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Solids, Total Suspended Solids (TSS), Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	Cool ≤6 °C	7 days.
Sulfate	Cool ≤6 °C	28 days.

below. The holding time for fecal coliform sample has been expanded by the WAB from 6 hours to 24 hours¹. **However, fecal samples collected for the TMDL program may need to comply with the six-hour holding time depending on the specific instructions given for that watershed.**

¹ The six-hour holding time places severe limitations on the amount of time a crew can spend in the field. Since these samples are not being collected for enforcement purposes, WAB has expanded the holding time to 24 hours.

Table 9. Preservation Methods and Holding Times

Parameter	Preservation	Max. Holding Time
Fecal Coliform	Cool <10 °C, 0.0008% Na ₂ S ₂ O ₃	6 hours. (24 hours for TMDL/WAB samples)
Acidity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Alkalinity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Ammonia	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chloride	None required	28 days.
Kjeldahl (TKN) and Organic N	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chromium VI	Cool ≤6 °C, pH = 9.3–9.7	28 days.
Mercury (CVAA)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	28 days.
Mercury (CVAFS)	5 mL/L 12N HCl or 5 mL/L BrCl	90 days.
Total Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Dissolved Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	Filtered, HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Nitrate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrite	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrate-Nitrite (NO ₂ -NO ₃ -N)	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Orthophosphate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Dissolved Orthophosphate	Filtered, Cool ≤6 °C	Filter within 15 minutes; 48 hours.
Phosphorous, Total	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Solids, Total Suspended Solids (TSS), Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	Cool ≤6 °C	7 days.
Sulfate	Cool ≤6 °C	28 days.

Samples should be dealt with in the following order:

- 1) Unfixed Samples (e.g., Fecal Coliform, Unfixed Cubitainer)
- 2) Filter Samples (e.g., Dissolved Metals, Dissolved Nutrients)
- 3) Fix Samples (e.g., Total & Dissolved Metals, Total & Dissolved Nutrients).

The fecal coliform sample should be double bagged before being put on ice to prevent accidental contamination of other samples should the sample container become compromised. The samples that only need to be cooled on ice (commonly referred to as Unfixed or No Fix) can also be placed on ice at this time.

Filtration

Protocols for Sample Filtration with Peristaltic Pump/Drill Apparatus (Dissolved Metals & Dissolved Nutrients)

The components of the filtering apparatus are:

1. Peristaltic Pump mounted on Stabilizing Board
2. Power Drill with Pump Adaptor Bit
3. Tygon Tubing
4. Filters (50 mm cellulose acetate membranes with a 0.45 micron pore size); two varieties: Flat Disc or Cartridge.
5. Two sample containers (one for the stream sample and one to receive the filtered water).

It is important to keep the filtering equipment and area around the equipment clean. Try to handle all parts by the exterior components. Fingerprints and other dirt can contaminate samples. The tubing and filters should be kept in their sealed plastic bags until time of use to reduce exposure to dust and other contaminants.

Ideally, the filtering process would occur at streamside by taking the filtered samples (e.g., dissolved metals and dissolved orthophosphate) directly from the water column. However, this is dependent upon there being a flat, streamside surface to work on and no precipitation that could short the drill. If filtering cannot occur directly from the water column, the sample water to be filtered should be collected in a clean container that is rinsed twice with stream water and transported to a suitable area for filtration and preservation within 15 minutes of collection. **This container should be the only one that will be exposed to the Tygon tubing and not reused from site to site. Do not filter from the Total Metals sample container as the insertion of the Tygon tubing may contaminate the sample.**

Procedure:

1. Assemble the filtration unit:
 - Place the drill upside down on stabilizing board and carefully insert the bit into the peristaltic pump.
 - The bit may need to be rotated slightly in order to line up with the receiving shaft and engage fully.
 - Place the unfiltered stream sample container near the pump and remove the cap.
 - Open the pump clamp by lifting the lever.
 - Without directly touching the tubing, open the sealed tubing bag and remove about 8 inches of tubing. Place this end into the unfiltered stream sample container. The rest of the tubing can now be manipulated directly with the

- hands, but avoid touching the other end of the tubing if at all possible. Thread the tubing through the pump and close clamp.
- If filtering directly from stream, the tubing can be touched with the hands.
 - Place the stream end of the tubing so that sediment is not being collected from streambed.
- Attach the filter to one end of tubing
 - Handle filter by edges only, with the pressure valve facing toward the pump and stream sample. The cartridge filters should have an arrow indicating the direction of flow.
 - Make sure not to touch the end of the filter that will be discharging into the dissolved sample container.
2. Flush the filter and tubing briefly with sample water by engaging drill slowly for several seconds.
 - Do not collect the flushed water in the filtered container. Discard elsewhere.
 3. Rinse the filtered container:
 - Hold the filter at an angle above the mouth of the receiving (filtered water) container at the point of where the tubing is attached.
 - This will allow the user to feel if pressure is building up too quickly in the tube and prevent the tube from explosively detaching from the filter and potentially contaminating the filtered sample. **Do not hold the tube too tightly as this could also cause leakage around the attachment point.**
 - Engage the drill slowly and fill the receiving container with about 50 mL of water. **DO NOT OPEN THE DRILL FULL THROTTLE AS IT WILL RUPTURE THE FILTER AND CONTAMINATE THE SAMPLE!!!**
 - Cap the container, shake vigorously and discard filtrate.
 - Repeat.
 4. Filtering the sample:
 - Engage the drill and fill the receiving container with at least 200 mL, unless otherwise directed. On one liter cubitainers, this location is near the first character on the long diagonal bar on the side of the cubitainer.
 - Use slow drill speeds (never full throttle) to filter the sample, especially when approaching the desired sample about. This method is supposed to be cleaner, not necessarily faster.
 - If you are close to being done and the pressure is building too fast in the tubing, try using a pulsation with the drill speed. This will often get you to the end without having to change the filter.
 5. Changing filters:

Sometimes it becomes necessary to change the filter while in the middle of processing a water sample. This is usually due to the filter membrane becoming

overwhelmed with small particles of silt, which causes the sample to filter extremely slowly. The filter can also become clogged with seemingly clear water due to unseen periphyton. This will also cause the filter to be changed. If the field personnel feel that it is necessary to change the filter to achieve the minimum amount of sample necessary, the following steps should be taken:

- Cap the receiving container, relieve the pressure in the tube by reversing the drill momentarily or unlocking the clamp, and remove the clogged filter from the end of the tubing.
- Replace with a clean filter as before in Step 1 being careful not to touch ends of filter.
- Flush the new filter as in Step 2 and resume filtering.

Repeat these steps until a sufficient sample is collected. Record on the lab analysis form how many filters were used. This would give the lab an idea about how high the total suspended solids in the sample should be.

6. You must discard and restart the sample if:

- The filter is cracked or split during use.
- The filter is dislodged from tubing while filtering and the unfiltered water contaminates the filtered sample during use. This would be typical if this happens explosively.
- Sediment is collected directly from bottom of stream.

NOTE: The tubing and filters are disposable, and should only be used once. Discard the each filter after one use and discard the tubing after each sample. Obtain a clean set for the next sampling event.

Protocols for Sample Filtration using a Vacuum Pump (Dissolved Metals & Dissolved Nutrients)

The components of the filtering apparatus are:

1. Filter Flask – Receptacle for the filtered sample
2. Filter Funnel – Consists of two parts: A cup to hold the unfiltered sample and the funnel itself.
3. Filters – Cellulose Nitrate membranes with a 0.45 micron pore size.
4. Vacuum Pump – A variety of hand operated pumps are available.

It is important to keep the filtering apparatus clean. Try to handle all parts by the exterior components or by the stopper. Fingerprints and other dirt can contaminate samples. The Filter Funnel & Filter Flask should be stored in a Zip Loc bag or other container (even when driving from one site to another) to reduce exposure to dust and other contaminants.

Procedure:

The water for the filtered sample must be taken from a portion of the total metals sample.

1. Rinse off the filter apparatus (cup, funnel and flask) with deionized water.
 - Be careful not to get water into the nipple on the flask.
 - Rinse each part separately. Do not let rinse water from cup drip into either the funnel or flask and do not let rinse water from the funnel drip into the flask.

2. Assemble the filtration unit:
 - Attach the funnel to the flask.
 - Place a filter on the funnel.
 - Handle the filter by the edges only.
 - Make sure the filter is centered on the funnel's screen.
 - Attach cup, be sure to get a good seal.

3. Initial Rinse:
 - Pour a small amount of sample into cup.
 - Filter sample, making sure all the water has passed through.
 - Depressurize the pump.
 - Wipe drips from exterior of cup & funnel and remove from flask without disassembling cup from funnel.
 - Rinse the flask with a swirling motion and discard filtrate (be careful to avoid getting filtrate in the flask nipple).

4. Filtering the sample:
 - Place cup & funnel assembly back into flask.
 - Pour a larger amount of the sample into the cup.
 - If water is turbid, use small amounts; filter may clog and need to be changed.
 - Do not put too much sample into the cup since this may exceed the capacity of the flask, causing water to be sucked into the pump.
 - Wipe off any spills outside of the cup.
 - Filter sample using full strokes on the pump.
 - Depressurize pump after sample has been filtered and before changing filters.

5. Changing filters:

Sometimes it becomes necessary to change the filter while in the middle of processing a water sample. This is usually due to the filter membrane becoming overwhelmed with small particles of silt which causes filtering to become extremely slow. If the field personnel feel that it is necessary to change the filter to achieve the minimum amount of sample necessary the following steps should be taken:

- If there is any left, pour off the excess water out of the cup by turning the filter apparatus on its side with the siphon arm up so that no filtered water can escape from the flask or enter the vacuum tube. One should support both the cup and the lower funnel so that the two do not break the magnetic seal and separate.
 - Filter off any excess water until the filter is dry.
 - Remove the cup from the funnel.
 - Holding funnel sideways, remove old filter. Start from the top of the filter and pull downward.
 - If there is any question that unfiltered water may have dripped onto the funnel or into the flask, assume that the sample has been contaminated and the filtering process must be reinitiated from the beginning.
 - Install a fresh filter handling only by edges.
 - Replace the cup and continue filtering.
 - Repeat these steps until sufficient sample (usually a net of 200ml of sample after rinsing the cubitainer 1-2 times, but check with lab beforehand). It is also a good idea to put on the lab analysis form how many filters were used if greater than 1. This would give the lab an idea about how high the Total Suspended Solids in the sample should be.
7. You must discard and restart the sample if:
- Filter is cracked or split during use.
 - Sediment on filter is off-center (no white ring around entire edge).
8. End of week cleaning:
- Rinse cup, funnel and flask with tap water; wipe off scum.
 - Use a brush to lightly clean the funnel's screen.
 - Rinse cup, funnel and flask thoroughly with deionized water and shake off excess droplets.
 - Place a filter on the funnel's screen and store cup/funnel assembled in a zip loc bag.
 - Rinse only the glass flask with 10% HCl. The plastic portions (funnel and cup) may only be rinsed with deionized water and lightly rubbed with a paper towel.
 - Do not touch inside surfaces of filtration apparatus.

Fixation

As outlined in **Table 9**. Preservation Methods and Holding Times

Parameter	Preservation	Max. Holding Time
Fecal Coliform	Cool <10 °C, 0.0008% Na ₂ S ₂ O ₃	6 hours. (24 hours for TMDL/WAB samples)
Acidity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Alkalinity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Ammonia	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chloride	None required	28 days.
Kjeldahl (TKN) and Organic N	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chromium VI	Cool ≤6 °C, pH = 9.3–9.7	28 days.
Mercury (CVAA)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	28 days.
Mercury (CVAFS)	5 mL/L 12N HCl or 5 mL/L BrCl	90 days.
Total Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Dissolved Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	Filtered, HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Nitrate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrite	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrate-Nitrite (NO ₂ -NO ₃ -N)	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Orthophosphate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Dissolved Orthophosphate	Filtered, Cool ≤6 °C	Filter within 15 minutes; 48 hours.
Phosphorous, Total	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Solids, Total Suspended Solids (TSS), Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	Cool ≤6 °C	7 days.
Sulfate	Cool ≤6 °C	28 days.

above, some samples will need to be fixed with acids before being stored. Samples that are preserved with Sulfuric Acid should always be preserved before samples that are preserved with Nitric Acid. This is because the volatile Nitric Acid vapors may contaminate Nutrient samples and give false Nitrogen results. If you do accidentally preserve the Nitric Acid sample first, then move away from that area when fixing the Sulfuric Acid (e.g., the opposite end of the vehicle or 20 feet away).

When fixing a sample with acids, careful consideration must be given to the ambient chemistry of the stream (i.e., pH and conductivity) and volume of sample being preserved. Any given ample of acid is designed to preserve 1 liter of normal water (i.e., pH near neutral and normal conductivities like 200 µmhos/cm). If a stream has a low pH and/or low conductivity, one ample of acid may over preserve the sample. Conversely, if a stream has a high pH and/or high conductivity, one ample of acid may not be enough to adequately preserve the sample. A larger volume of sample water would also require more acid; a smaller volume less. Less experienced individuals should use pH test strips in order to gage how much acid to add to adequately fix sample.

Testing a sample with a pH test strip.

- 1) First add a small amount of acid to the sample (maybe half of an ampule).
- 2) Seal the sample and shake it to mix in the acid.
- 3) Open the sample and pour a small amount onto a pH test strip. **Never dip the pH test strips into the sample!**
- 4) Compare the pH test strip color to the color key on the pH test strip package. The target pH is just below 2.
- 5) If more acid needs to be added, then add more accordingly. Otherwise, seal the sample and put it on ice if necessary.

Holding

With the exception of fecal coliform, all samples should be delivered to the lab within the holding times specified in "Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater", 18th Edition and as outlined above in **Table 9**. Preservation Methods and Holding Times

Parameter	Preservation	Max. Holding Time
Fecal Coliform	Cool <10 °C, 0.0008% Na ₂ S ₂ O ₃	6 hours. (24 hours for TMDL/WAB samples)
Acidity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Alkalinity	Cool ≤6 °C	14 days.
Ammonia	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chloride	None required	28 days.
Kjeldahl (TKN) and Organic N	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Chromium VI	Cool ≤6 °C, pH = 9.3–9.7	28 days.
Mercury (CVAA)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	28 days.
Mercury (CVAFS)	5 mL/L 12N HCl or 5 mL/L BrCl	90 days.
Total Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Dissolved Metals (except Boron, Chromium VI, and Mercury)	Filtered, HNO ₃ to pH<2	6 months
Nitrate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrite	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Nitrate-Nitrite (NO ₂ -NO ₃ -N)	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Orthophosphate	Cool ≤6 °C	48 hours.
Dissolved Orthophosphate	Filtered, Cool ≤6 °C	Filter within 15 minutes; 48 hours.
Phosphorous, Total	Cool ≤6 °C, H ₂ SO ₄ to pH<2	28 days.
Total Solids, Total Suspended Solids (TSS), Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	Cool ≤6 °C	7 days.
Sulfate	Cool ≤6 °C	28 days.

When the sample is delivered to the laboratory, or picked up by a laboratory representative, complete the chain-of-custody section at the bottom of the "Analysis Request Form". Keep the white copy for WAB records and give the yellow copy to the lab or delivery person.

Water Quality Parameters

Take Hydrolab readings & Fecal coliform at every site!

Random & Potential Reference Sites:

- Acidity (Hot), Alkalinity, Sulfate, Chloride, Fecal coli., TSS, **TDS**, Tot. Phos., TKN, NO₂-NO₃-N, Mg, **K, Na**, Al (Tot. & Dis.), Cu (Dis.), Fe (Tot. & Dis.), Mn, Zn (Dis.), Ca, Se (Tot.). (Note: Order Low Level Detection on Tot. & Dis. Cu, Zn, & Se.)

4 cubitainers (iced, HNO₃, filtered HNO₃, & H₂SO₄) & fecal

AMD Parameters:

Take when: 1) conductivity alone is >500, 2) pH <6.0 & conductivity is >200, 3) if stream is on the 303(d) list for AMD, or 4) if for any reason you suspect mine drainage:

- Acidity (Hot), Alkalinity, Sulfate, Fecal coli., TSS, Al (Tot. & Dis.), Fe (Tot. & Dis.), Mn, & Se (Tot. & Dis.). Take Ammonia-N (NH₃) if it is suspected that Ammonia is being used to treat the stream water.

3 cubitainers (iced, HNO₃, & filtered HNO₃) & fecal

Acid Rain Parameters:

Take when: 1) pH <6.0 & conductivity is <50, 2) if stream is on the 303(d) list for pH unrelated to mining, or 2) if for any reason you suspect acid rain deposition impacting the stream:

- Acidity (Hot), Alkalinity, Sulfate, Fecal coli., Acidity (Cold), TSS, Al (Tot. & Dis.), Fe (Tot. & Dis.), Mn, & Ca (Tot.).

3 cubitainers (iced, HNO₃, & filtered HNO₃) & fecal

Nutrient Enrichment:

Take within 24 hours of a significant rain or when animal waste, straight pipes, STP outfalls, etc., may be impacting the stream:

- TSS, Tot. Phos., TKN, NO₂-NO₃-N, & Fecal coli. Take Ammonia-N (NH₃) if cattle or other livestock have direct access to stream or if there is evidence of possible ammonia input.

2 cubitainers (iced, H₂SO₄) & fecal

TDS Ions:

Take anywhere in Monongahela Basin (Dunkard, Monongahela, West Fork, Tygart, Youghiogheny, & Cheat):

- Sulfate, Chloride, Fecal coli, TDS, Mg, K, Na, & Ca.

2 cubitainer (iced) & fecal

Oil & Gas:

Take if oil or gas activities are evident & cond. >200 in absence of other sources like AMD:

- Chloride, & Fecal coli.

1 cubitainer (iced) & fecal

Other Water Quality Notes:

- Double bag fecal bottles in separate zip-lock sandwich size baggies before putting in **ice** (do not submerge in ice water!).
- Label each container w/ WV DEP WAB, stream name, AN-Code, date/time collected, collector (especially if a duplicate), & preservative types.
- Take water samples at lower end of reach for Non- Random targeted sites. Take water samples at X-site for random sites regardless of the location of the lower end of 100 m assessment reach.
- If Alkalinity is being analyzed, 100% of the air must be expunged from the unfixed cubitainer to avoid contamination.
- Remember: A net minimum of 200 mL of filtered sample should be turned in for dissolved metal analysis at most labs we deal with.

Water Sample Collection Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with habitat sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the collection and handling of water quality samples is included. In the field, biological sampling teams will consist of two people. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in collecting water quality will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results before they are allowed to collect water quality solo. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Sample labels are to be accurate and complete and contain all the information discussed above. Sampling equipment will be checked for contaminants and excess dirt or moisture cleaned before and after each sampling event. Lot numbers of all preservatives are recorded on the "Analysis Request Form" for each sample submitted and entered into the database to allow for easy tracking. Sample transfer to the lab shall also be documented using the "Analysis Request Form" as a Chain of Custody (COC).

Duplicate sampling and field blanks must be performed at a minimum of 2.5% of our

sites. To assure we meet these requirements, each team list will have a designated duplicate and field blank. The field blank and duplicate data are looked at by Watershed Assessment Branch staff and scrutinized to find any possible discrepancies, contamination, or faults in the sampling methods and techniques. Any problems are brought to the attention of the program management and steps are made to immediately correct the problem. Data that is related to the problem are flagged with notes concerning the details of the situation so that decisions can be made whether or not to include the data in any further assessments or analysis. Procedures for performing duplicates and field blanks are presented below. **See Chapter VIII. Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates for additional information.**

Field Blanks

Overview

To evaluate sample containers for contamination, each team will prepare field blanks weekly. Distilled, deionized water is used as the blank "sample". This water should be carried in an unused, well-sealed, one-gallon cubitainer. During the designated sampling event, an extra set of cubitainers are prepared as field blanks, one container for each type of preservation method. The blanks are labeled according to the protocols. These containers are filled with the distilled/deionized water and are preserved and stored in the same manner as the actual samples. A separate "Analysis Request Form" is completed for the field blanks and the samples are submitted to the laboratory.

Field blanks are simply samples of deionized water that are preserved in the field. The purpose of the field blank is to detect onsite contamination and verify the purity of the sample fixatives.

Obtaining the Field Blank Water

Before leaving the office, obtain the deionized water by collecting it directly from the laboratory supplied containers.

Procedures for obtaining water from the laboratory supplied containers are as follows:

1. Fill up an unused, one-gallon cubitainer with some water (approximately 100 mL).
2. Screw on the lid, shake the rinse water, and dump. Repeat.
3. After two rinses, completely fill up the one-gallon cubitainer, expunge any remaining air, and place in the vehicle to be used in the field as a source for the field blank water.

Field blanks are to be prepared in the field only and not in the laboratory or garage. A stream location is sometimes designated on the sample list for a field blank. If you miss the exact location indicated on the sheet, prepare a field blank at the next

location. The reason why field blanks are indicated on your list is to remind you to do it AND to assure that field blanks are prepared at random locations and times.

A field blank will consist of any parameters that are or may be analyzed during the work week. This may include:

- 1 full cubitainer for Unfixed Samples (Chlorides, Hot Acidity, Alkalinity, TSS, Sulfates, Lab pH, Lab Cond., Cold Acidity, Total Orthophosphate, etc.)
- 1 full cubitainer for Sulfuric Acid Preserved Samples (Total Phosphorous, TKN, NO₂-NO₃-N, Unionized NH₃)
- ½ full cubitainer for Nitric Acid Preserved Samples (All Total Metals)
- ½ full cubitainer for Filtered Nitric Acid Preserved Samples (All Dissolved Metals)
- ½ full cubitainer for Filtered Unfixed Samples (Dissolved Orthophosphate)

Do not prepare a field blank for fecal samples, as the deionized water is not sterile.

Field Procedures

1. To prepare a field blank, retrieve your pre-filled one-gallon cubitainer with DI water from storage in the vehicle.
2. Label an appropriate number of one liter cubitainers in a manner that it will appear to be an actual water sample to the lab, but will also be recognizable as a field blank to WAB employees.
3. Fix and handle the samples as you would do for a stream sample by substituting the DI water in the one-gallon cubitainer for actual stream water (including filtering for dissolved parameters if that was or will be done during the week).
4. After the sample has been submitted to the lab, write "FIELD BLANK" at the top of the DEP copy (white) of the Analysis Request Form before turning it in with the other forms.

Duplicate Samples

Both duplicates are collected at the same date and time and literally side by side by different individuals. If the sampling team consists of one person, as is often the case during a TMDL assessment, the duplicate is still performed by the one sampler. Extreme care is taken to assure that the second duplicate is not taken from an area that may have been disturbed by the first duplicate. TMDL replicates are collected at any TMDL site with the full potential of parameters on the TMDL list. TMDL replicate sites are not specifically assigned; however, field crews should not repeatedly duplicate the same site.

Duplication will be limited to the water quality parameters assigned to that site; *i.e.*, if the site is fecal only, just do fecal. Duplicates for lists that have varying water analysis

suites should be conducted at sites where the most parameters on the list are collected (if such sites exist on the list) and, if repeated, should be rotated to different sites each sampling event.

Results of the duplicates are compared and any samples not falling within an acceptable range are examined for sampling error. The duplicate data will be analyzed to ensure precision and repeatability of the sampling technique. Every effort is made to assure that different teams perform the duplicate sampling throughout the sampling season to ensure that all variability is being captured. The variances between individual techniques will be documented and used in future training sessions or individual re-training.

Note: If two people are involved in collecting a duplicate, each person should filter his or her own sample and not filter the other person's sample.

Chapter IV. BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE PROTOCOLS

Overview

Definitions

MACROINVERTEBRATES - Animals that are large enough to be seen with the naked eye and do not have a backbone.

BENTHIC ORGANISMS (or BENTHOS) - Living organisms that reside on the bottom of streams, rivers, or lakes. Benthos may include vertebrates, invertebrates, or plants.

KICK - One method for collecting benthos. A hand-held net is held in the stream. The stream bed upstream of the net is disturbed using a kicking motion to dislodge the organisms, which then float into the net.

Benthic Macroinvertebrates as Environmental Indicators

Benthic macroinvertebrates are small animals living among the sediments and stones on the bottom of streams, rivers, and lakes. Insects comprise the largest diversity of these organisms and include mayflies, stoneflies, caddisflies, beetles, midges, crane flies, dragonflies, and others. Other members of the benthic macroinvertebrate community are snails, clams, aquatic worms, and crayfish. These organisms are extremely important in the food chain of aquatic environments. They are extremely important in the food chain of aquatic environments as they are important players in the processing and cycling of nutrient and are major food sources for fish and other aquatic animals.

Benthic macroinvertebrates have been used for many years to assess water quality. Currently, they are utilized throughout the world in water quality assessments, as environmental indicators of biological integrity, to describe water quality conditions or health of aquatic ecosystems, and to identify causes of impairment. Benthic macroinvertebrate communities are known to respond to a wide array of environmental stressors, and in different ways. This response will often make it possible to determine the type of stress that has affected the community. Many macroinvertebrate taxa have relatively long life cycles. Thus, community structure is a function of past water quality conditions.

Basis of Sampling Method

The sampling methods to be used in the WVDEP Watershed Assessment Branch (WAB) are qualitative in nature and are outlined in "Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Wadeable Rivers and Streams, Second Edition" - U.S. Environmental Protection

Agency, July 1999 (EPA 841-B-99-002) (see **Figure 2. Cover of EPA's Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Wadeable Streams and Rivers (Second Edition) in Chapter II. Section C. Part 1. PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a**). This protocol has been adopted for use by many states and organizations. The WAB will utilize the Single Habitat Approach when possible, using a rectangular dip net (0.5 m wide) or smaller (0.3 m wide) D-net with 595 μm mesh size to sample riffle/run habitats. The Multi-habitat Approach (also called MACS, which stands for Mid-Atlantic Coastal Streams) may be used in slow-moving wetland type streams, using the smaller D-net. **It is important to note that the following protocols were established for use by the Watershed Assessment Branch monitoring programs and were intended to provide cost-effective techniques with comparable data across the state. Special projects outside of the Watershed Assessment Branch monitoring agenda (i.e., point source surveys, spills, large river monitoring) may not allow strict adherence to these protocols.**

The sampling protocols are listed and prioritized below:

1. Rectangular Dip Net - for riffle habitats ≥ 0.5 meter wide
2. D-Frame Net - for riffle habitats < 0.5 meter wide
3. D-Frame Net - used in the absence of moving water (for use in low-gradient streams and glide/pool habitat – MACS or Multi-habitat Approach)
4. Hand Picking - used in very small streams where other sampling apparatus cannot be used.

These methods are described in detail in the subsequent sections.

Selecting Sampling Sites

Predominantly, streams in West Virginia are high gradient with coarse substrate materials such as boulder, cobble, and gravel. These physical conditions are responsible for the typical riffle/run habitats commonly found in most areas of the state. WAB establishes sample sites and assessment reaches on streams based on the best available riffle/run habitat (random sites excluded). There should be at least one square meter of riffle/run habitat in the assessment reach to obtain a complete benthic macroinvertebrate sample.

It is important that the sampling method be selected based on the availability of the reference condition (riffle/run predominant for most of WV) and not of potentially impaired streams. For example, sampling decisions should not be altered for situations where the amount of cobble/gravel substrate in streams influenced by heavy sediment deposition may be substantially reduced from the amount of cobble/gravel substrate expected for the region. That is, sample sites on streams with heavy deposits of fine sediments should not be avoided if it is determined that the sedimentation is not typical of the area and has resulted from poor land-use practices. Occasionally, low gradient streams are encountered that have heavy deposits of fine sediments as a result of naturally high sedimentation rates. In this case, the Multi-habitat Approach should be employed. Currently, WAB does not conduct benthic assessments on low gradient

streams unless there is a special interest for the resultant data. The decision to sample a particular stream site is field based and should be made after corroboration by WAB team members or by the most experienced person. In any event, detailed notes describing the situation should be recorded on the field form.

Another concern when locating a benthic sampling site is tributaries or sources that enter the stream within the reach and may significantly alter the water quality. It is extremely important that the benthic data collected always match the water chemistry observed and collected at the X-Site. During the site selection and planning that occurs in the office, every effort is made to try to avoid such situations by locating the site above tributaries and known sources. However, occasionally sources are unknown or moving the site is not possible (e.g., randomly selected sites). The most important thing to do is to always inspect the sample area as thoroughly as possible prior to beginning the benthic collection. Some things to look for are:

- 1) Significant change in water chemistry (i.e., pH, conductivity, DO, Temperature) from above the source to below the source.
- 2) Visual indicators that the tributary or source has a significant impact on the mainstem area downstream (e.g., sudden appearance of hydroxides, oils, grease, etc. below the tributary or source).
- 3) In larger streams, pluming of water chemistry along one bank due to an inadequate mixing zone in the mainstem.

In such cases, the entirety of the benthic kicks should be located either above or below the source. Unfortunately, outside of specific directions on the field list, there is little in the way of guidelines on picking one or the other and the samplers must rely on best professional judgment. In the case of a randomly selected site where the X-site is located below a source or tributary with a significant water quality impact to the stream and there is inadequate room to collect benthos in the area below the source, it would be best to treat the source or tributary with significant water chemistry issues using the same rules as sliding the reach downstream around the X-site to avoid crossing stream orders (**see Chapter II. Section A. Part 2.A Sliding the Reach**) so that the X-site and benthic collection area are in similar water quality.

Before sampling begins, a 100-meter assessment reach is established containing the X-site (usually located at the downstream terminus of the reach). All assessment activities are conducted within this designated reach including the collection of water samples, benthic macroinvertebrate samples, and habitat assessments. The benthic collector should select sampling points with the intent to make collections throughout the entire 100 meters in a diversity of the best available habitats. For example, look for varying conditions within the reach such as fast and slow riffle/runs, deep and shallow riffle/runs, shaded and exposed riffle/runs, and sample from the best available in each observed. In some instances, the best available habitat (e.g., riffle) may be limited to a small area within the reach. In this case, collections should be made within those areas only. However, if riffle areas occur throughout the 100-meter reach, an effort should be

made to collect from as many different points within the reach as possible. It is important to sample the diversity of riffle/run conditions if they exist.

The various habitat types that may be encountered are defined as follows:

Pool - Still water with low velocity. Water surface is smooth and glassy. Usually deep compared to other parts of the channel.

Glide - Slow moving water with a smooth, unbroken surface. Turbulence is low. Usually shallow compared to other parts of the channel.

Run – Similar to glide but water is moving slightly faster. Turbulence is low and the surface is without ripples that produce gurgling sounds. Runs may have small waves.

Riffle - Water moving with small ripples, waves and eddies. Produced a babbling or gurgling sound.

Snag - Submerged woody debris (logs, root wads, etc.).

Submerged Macrophytes - Aquatic vegetation growing beneath the water surface.

Vegetated and Undercut Banks - Stream banks having submerged vegetation (shrubs, etc.) and/or root wads.

Section A. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sampling

Materials and Reagents

See . & Figure 8. Photo of Materials used in Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sampling for Diagrams & Picture of most of these materials.

1. Rectangular Frame Dip Net – A net with a 0.5 m wide and 0.3 m high frame with 595 μm mesh openings and 0.5 m nylon bag attached to a four foot pole will be used to collect benthic macroinvertebrates in riffles and runs.
2. D-Frame Dip Net - A D-frame (D-net) aquatic dip net with 595 μm mesh openings and 1 ft. nylon bag will be used to sample streams that are too small to be sampled using the rectangular frame dip net.
3. Five-gallon bucket - to composite kick samples in the field.
4. 30 mesh sieve (600 μm) - to remove small particulates and water from samples.
5. Small dish washing scrub brush – aid in removing macroinvertebrates from stream substrate particles such as cobble and cleaning the net.
6. Small plastic container or tray – to temporarily hold the organic materials and elutriate.
7. Gallon-sized sample jars - containers to hold benthic sample and associated debris.
8. Inside and outside labels - for sample identification and tracking.
9. Fine-tipped forceps – for removing organisms from net or sieve.
10. One liter squirt bottle – for washing benthic organisms from the bucket, sieve, and elutriate container.
11. 95% Denatured ethanol - for preservation of benthic macroinvertebrates.

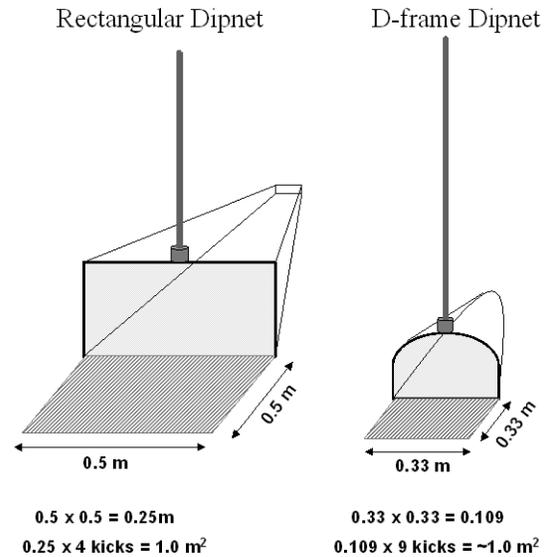


Figure 7. Diagram comparing the dimensions and number of kicks necessary to sample 1 m² of a Rectangular Frame Dip Net versus a D-Frame Dip Net



Figure 8. Photo of Materials used in Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sampling

12. Ice chest / cooler - for the storage of samples during transport.
13. Sample log book - for tracking the locations of the biological samples.

Field Safety Precautions

Rubber gloves and protective eyewear should be worn during sample collection to avoid bacterial contamination and for personal health protection as many streams may have sharp objects embedded in the substrate (e.g., glass, metal, wire, etc.). They should also be worn during sample preservation or at any time while handling alcohol, which can be a skin irritant and can cause damage to the eyes.

Sample Collection Methods

Before any benthic sampling event:

- Fill out a pre-printed sample label with a No. 2 pencil. Attach to the outside of the sample jar using clear, waterproof tape. Fill out a pre-printed sample label made of waterproof paper for the inside of the sample jar. Some place the inside label inside the jar before the sample is collected; others do so after the sample is collected. **Just make sure that the inside label gets inside the jar.**
- Fill the sample jar ½ full with 95% denatured ethanol.
- If using a net, check the net to ensure there are no holes or benthic remnants of previous samples. If there are holes or tears in the net, it should be repaired immediately before the next sample is collected and/or replaced as soon as possible.
- Wash the net in the stream to ensure that there are no benthic remnants of previous samples.

A. Rectangular Dip Net (Riffle/Run Habitats = Comparable)

This method is used in streams having riffle/run habitat and a width ≥ 0.5 meter. This method is to be used even when there is no cobble substrate in the riffle/run area. If the stream has enough flow to wash benthic macroinvertebrates into the net this is the method to use.

1. Select a riffle/run area to sample. Position the net on the stream bottom so as to eliminate gaps under the frame with the net opening upstream. Large rocks or logs that prevent the net from seating properly should be avoided (**see**



Figure 9. Photo of Rectangular Frame Dip Net being placed on stream bottom

Figure 9. Photo of Rectangular Frame

Dip Net being placed on stream bottom).

2. Hold the sampler in position on the substrate while checking for heavy organisms such as clams and snails in an area of about 0.25 m² (0.5m wide net x 0.5m upstream) in front of the net. Hand-pick these organisms and place them in the net or the bucket if placed nearby. Do not collect large freshwater mussels! Some mussel species are endangered and should not be disturbed. Record their presence on the field form and identify them if possible.



Figure 10. Photograph of the Brushing process in front of the net.

3. Brush the surfaces of all coarse gravel, cobble, boulder, and bedrock substrate (**see Figure 10**). If the substrate is removable, pull it up and hold it underwater in front of the center of the net while brushing all surfaces so that dislodged organisms flow into the net. Cleaned substrate should then be set aside. In low flow situations, these rocks can be placed at the edge of the net in a manner that increases the amount of water flowing through the net. Large substrate that is partially in the kick sample area should only be brushed on that portion which resides in the 0.25 m² kick area.

4. Hold the net handle securely while kicking the substrate vigorously for 20 seconds in an area of about 0.25 m² (0.5m wide net x 0.5m upstream) in front of the net (**see Figure 11**). At this time it may be possible to remove large objects (e.g., cobble, large gravel) from the net while the water is still sweeping through the net.



Figure 11. Photograph of the Kicking process in front of the net.



Figure 12. Photographs showing the removal of the net from the water with an upstream motion.

5. Remove the net from the water with a quick upstream motion to wash the organisms to the bottom of the net (*see Figure 12*). Empty the contents of the net into a five gallon bucket that is partially filled with water (*see Figure 13*). Emptying the net after each kick sample is recommended because debris can clog the net mesh causing reduced flow-through and back eddies, both of which can result in the loss of organisms. It is not necessary to fine pick every last item from the net at this point, just get the bulk of the sample into the bucket.



Figure 13. Photograph of Emptying the net into a 5-Gallon bucket partially filled with stream water.

6. Repeat this process until 4 riffle/run habitats have been sampled. This will result in 4 individual kick samples that cover approximately 1 m² (4 x 0.25 m²) of stream substrate. The 4 kick samples will be composited into 1 sample. If a diversity (fast and slow – stacked and flat, etc.) of riffle/run types is not present, collect the 4 samples from the best available habitat. It is important to obtain 4 kick samples for the composite. Always record the type and number of each riffle/run sampled on the field assessment form.

Note: The RBP protocol (EPA 841-B-99-002) suggests that 2 square meters of substrate should be sampled and composited at a given site. WAB determined through analysis of duplicate data (2 m² versus 1 m²)

and consultation with EPA Region III biologists that a 1 square meter sample is adequate for characterizing riffle/run streams in West Virginia where the West Virginia Stream Condition Index is to be used for impairment classification.

7. Inspect the net for clinging organisms. Using a pair of small forceps, remove all the remaining organisms and place them in the bucket.

8. After compositing all four kicks into the bucket, all large objects (rocks, sticks, leaves, etc.) should be carefully washed, inspected for organisms, and discarded (**see Figure 14**). It is very important to remove as much rough material as possible without losing organisms. This will reduce laboratory sorting time and limit the crushing and grinding that damages benthic specimens. However, if there is an excess of leaves in the sample, this step may become too time intensive to pursue beyond a cursory sorting and removal of the leaves. You can base the amount of time to spend with this by estimating how much longer your partner needs to finish the habitat assessment.



Figure 14. Photograph of Biologist inspecting benthic sample and removing rough material (rocks, sticks, and leaves)

9. Elutriate the bucket's soft, organic material (bugs, leaves, CPOM) by using a stirring or swirling motion. Begin pouring some of the elutriated organic material into U.S. Standard 30 sieve. Using a quiet area of the stream or fresh water in the bucket, gently touch the bottom of the sieve to the water surface and rotate it in a circular motion. This will aid in removing fine sediments from the sample. Transfer this material from the sieve into a temporary container (e. g., another bucket, a tray, another sample jar) (**see Figure 15**). Repeat this process until almost all of the organic material is removed from the bucket. If possible, release any fish and/or salamanders and



Figure 15. Photograph of soft, organic material placed and stored in a temporary container.

document the species and number released in the Wildlife Observations section of the Habitat Form. Set the container of elutriated material aside.

10. Begin the elutriation process again with the inorganic material (gravel, sand, silt). Pour some of the contents of the bucket through a U.S. Standard 30 sieve. Too much material in the sieve may result in accidental spillage.

11. Using a quiet area of the stream or fresh water in the bucket, gently touch the bottom of the sieve to the water surface and rotate it in a circular motion. This will aid in removing fine sediments from the sample. **DO NOT IMMERSE THE SIEVE ENTIRELY AS THIS WILL RESULT IN THE LOSS OF ORGANISMS.** If possible, release all fish and salamanders and document the species and number released in the Wildlife Observations section of the Habitat Form.



Figure 16. Photograph of Biologist transferring the hard, inorganic material (e.g., fine gravel, sand, and silt) to a sample jar ½ filled with alcohol.

12. Pour the hard, inorganic material such as fine gravel and sand from the sieve into a sample jar already ½ filled with denatured ethanol (**see Figure 16**). Repeat Steps 9-11 until all of the inorganic material is sieved and placed into the sample jar. Using a squirt bottle filled with stream water, rinse any remaining material from the bucket onto the sieve.

13. Use the squirt bottle to aid in removing remnants of the sample from the sieve, but avoid getting large amounts of water in the sample jar, as this will dilute the preservative. Inspect the sieve carefully for any remaining organisms and place them in the sample jar.



Figure 17. Photograph of Biologist inspecting transferring the soft, organic material (e.g., shredded leaves and benthic organisms) to the sample jar.

14. Return to the elutriated soft, organic material (bugs, leaves, CPOM) that was set aside earlier from Step 9. Using a quiet area of the stream or fresh water in the bucket, gently touch

the bottom of the sieve to the water surface and rotate it in a circular motion. This will aid in removing fine sediments from the sample. Once all of the fine sediments are thoroughly removed, place the elutriated organic contents in the sieve on top of the inorganic material (gravel, sand, silt) previously in the sample jar as in Step 12 (*see Figure 17 above*). Placing the elutriated material on top in the sample jar will protect the often fragile benthic organisms from damage due to grinding and compaction during transport to the laboratory. Do not invert or shake the sample jar after the elutriated materials are placed inside.

B. D-net (Riffle/Run Habitat = Comparable)

In some situations the stream may be too narrow or shallow to sample using a Rectangular Dip Net. In this case, a D-net will be substituted for sample collection. The methods outlined for the Rectangular Dip Net are applicable when using the D-net in riffle/run streams. The only modification is an increase in the number of kick samples to be collected. This change is necessary to sample approximately the same area (1 square meter). Since the D-net is ≈ 0.33 m wide, we will sample a square area in front of the net of 0.1108 m^2 ($0.333\text{m} \times 0.333\text{m}$). In order to sample 1 m^2 , we need to collect from 9 locations ($0.1108 \text{ m}^2 \times 9 = 0.9972 \text{ m}^2$).

C. D-net – Multi-habitat Approach (Low Gradient Streams, Glide/Pool Habitat=Non-Comparable)

The RBP procedures described above are only applicable to flowing, wadeable streams. The Multi-habitat Approach is based on protocols developed by the Mid-Atlantic Coastal Streams (MACS) Workgroup, which are employed in low gradient, slow moving streams. **This method is to be used only in wetland type habitat where flow is insufficient to move suspended materials into a net.**

Note: This type of sampling is considered non-comparable at this time as the majority of other samples taken by the Watershed Assessment Branch and analyzed using the WVSCI (West Virginia Stream Condition Index). Therefore, it should only be used for special surveys/projects or if specifically specified in the sampling plan/instructions.

1. Determine the types of productive habitat to be sampled and the percentage of each habitat within the sample station. Productive habitats are snags, vegetated banks, and submerged macrophytes. A total of 20 jab-sweeps (see next step) are collected based on the proportion of productive habitats available in the 100-meter assessment area. For example, if 50% of the habitat is snag material and 50% is submerged macrophytes, then 10 jab-sweeps (50%) are taken in snags and 10 jab-sweeps (50%) are taken in

submerged macrophytes. If a particular type of habitat is rare (<5%), it is not sampled.

2. Collect macroinvertebrates by jab-sweeping the net into productive and stable habitat. A "jab-sweep" is an aggressive thrusting and sweeping of the net into productive habitat for a distance of one half meter. **Make only one jab-sweep; resist the urge to re-sweep!** A total of 20 jab-sweeps will be combined to complete the sample. The precise jab-sweep technique will vary with the type of habitat being sampled.
 - A. **Snags** –Disturb the snag area first by kicking it to dislodge the organisms. Then quickly jab-sweep the net into small sticks and branches or scrape the net along the lower surface of logs. Medium sized snag material is best –sticks and branches. Large logs should be avoided because they are generally difficult to sample adequately.
 - B. **Submerged Macrophytes** - In deep water, drag the net through the vegetation from the bottom to the water surface (maximum of 0.5 m each jab). In shallow water, bump the net along the stream bottom within the macrophyte bed, avoiding sediments where possible.
 - C. **Vegetated and Undercut Banks** - Use the snag collection method for collecting from roots and emergent plants that are on the lower banks of streams. Submerged areas of undercut banks are included here. Sample unvegetated banks by bumping the net along the substrate.
3. After five jab-sweeps have been collected, empty the net into a 5-gallon bucket containing stream water. (The net may be emptied more frequently, depending on the amount of material.) Repeat until 20 jab-sweeps have been collected.

The remaining procedure is the same as for the Rectangular Dip Net. Follow steps 8 through 14 under Sample Collection Methods – I. Rectangular Dip Net (Riffle/Run Habitats = Comparable) to complete field processing and preservation.

D. Hand Picking (Small narrow streams with minimal/interstitial flow = Non-Comparable)

This sampling method should only be used for special surveys/projects or if specifically specified in the sampling plan/instructions as it is considered non-comparable to other samples. This method should be used in very shallow low-flow situations where there is not enough water to flow over the lip of the Rectangular Dip Net or D-net. Do not collect a sample if there is no interstitial flow in the areas between pools.

1. Sample in areas that would be considered riffles in higher flows. Do not sample in pool habitat. Pick up rocks (small gravel to small boulder) from about 0.25 m² (same area as that would be sampled by the Rectangular Dip Net) of substrate. Rub and rinse the rocks into a 5 gallon bucket partially filled with water. Repeat this procedure at four different areas - looking for the best habitats (highest interstitial water flow and most cobble sized rocks).
2. Use the rocks sampled to complete the benthic substrate section of the Habitat Assessment Form.
3. Pour the entire contents of the bucket through a U.S. Standard 30 sieve. Using a squirt bottle, rinse any remaining organisms from the bucket onto the sieve. Using forceps, remove any remaining organisms and transfer to jar. Place sample jar in cooler or other air-tight container designated for benthic macroinvertebrates.

The remaining procedure is the same as for the Rectangular Dip Net. Follow steps 8 through 14 under Sample Collection Methods – I. Rectangular Dip Net (Riffle/Run Habitats = Comparable) to complete field processing and preservation.

Sample Preservation Methods

1. Fill a gallon sized sample jar about 75% full with 95% denatured ethanol. The goal is to reach a concentration of ethanol near 70% after the sample and some water has been added. If there is a small amount of water and organic material in the sample, it may not be necessary to fill the jar to 75% capacity to reach a 70% concentration. It is important that sufficient ethanol be used to reach 70% concentration. In addition, enough alcohol should be added to at least immerse all of the material in the jar. If more ethanol is needed, it can be added after the sample is received at the laboratory.
2. Make sure that there is a waterproof label filled out with pencil inside the jar and a label affixed to the outside of the jar using clear packing tape. Include stream name, ANCode, and date on both labels. Place the jar in a cooler or other container designated for the storage and transport of benthic macroinvertebrate samples to the laboratory.
3. Avoid agitating the sample jars as much as possible. Do not invert the jars.

Laboratory Documentation or Check-In

Upon return to the office, all samples are to be logged into a Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook. Each entry is to include: Date of Collection, date received by office,

stream name, Random number (if applicable), AN-Code, and collector's initials. If a sample is in multiple jars, each jar is entered individually and designated as "1 of 2" or "2 of 2", as appropriate.

Benthic Sampling Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Sample labels are to be accurate and complete and contain all the information discussed above. Sample equipment will be checked for residual benthic material, rubbed clean and thoroughly rinsed with stream water before and after each sampling event.

Duplicate samples will be collected from 2.5% of the sites sampled and only when at least two people are on a sampling team. Benthic macroinvertebrates will be collected along with other activities at the designated duplicate WAB sites. Both duplicates are collected at the same date and approximate time (as equipment sharing will allow) by different individuals. Extreme care is taken to assure that the second duplicate is not taken from an area that may have been depleted by the first duplicate. The duplicate data will be analyzed to ensure precision and repeatability of the sampling technique. Every effort is made to assure that different teams perform the duplicate sampling throughout the sampling season to ensure that all variability is being captured. The variances between individual techniques will be documented and used in future training sessions or individual re-training. In addition the duplicate data is looked at by Watershed Assessment Branch staff and scrutinized to find any possible discrepancies, contamination, or faults in the sampling methods and techniques. Any problems are brought to the attention of the program management and steps are made to immediately correct the problem. Data that is related to the problem are flagged with notes concerning the details of the situation so that decisions can be made whether or not to include the data in any further assessments or analysis. **See Chapter VIII. Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates for additional information.**

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the collection and handling of benthic macroinvertebrate samples is included. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, biological sampling teams will consist of two people. Individuals who are more experienced in collecting benthic macroinvertebrates will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Section B. Laboratory Processing of Benthic Macroinvertebrate Samples

Benthic macroinvertebrate sample sorting is performed utilizing a modification of U.S EPA's RBP II 200-count sub-sampling method. It is described in more detail in subsequent sections.

Sorting macroinvertebrates (a procedure often referred to as "bug picking") is an extremely important step in the biological research performed by the Watershed Assessment Branch. The quality of the work performed by the "picker" influences the quality of subsequent processes, such as identification and data analysis. A competent "picker" must be able to recognize the morphological diversity of aquatic organisms, as well as the various methods these organisms may use to hide themselves from predators. The outcome of the final study may be affected if only a few organisms are overlooked during the picking process.

The biologists in the Watershed Assessment Branch acknowledge the fact that the sorting process can be tedious at times. The picker is advised to discuss alternate sorting techniques that may be applied to difficult samples with senior biologists. All types of aquatic macroinvertebrates should be picked including insects, snails, clams, crustaceans (including crayfish), and worms.

Materials and Supplies

1. Sample jar - contains the unprocessed sample.
2. Sample vial - for storage of processed sample.
3. Enamel pans - contains sample during the sorting process.
4. Denatured ethanol - preservative used in unprocessed and processed samples.
5. # 30 sieve - used to separate alcohol and fine debris from the sample prior to picking.
6. Gridded sorting tray - (See **Figure 18 for an example**) a Plexiglas framed sorting tray is used to evenly distribute the washed sample and for randomly selecting the 200 organism subsample. The internal dimension of the tray is 20 inches by 5 inches. There are 100 grids in the tray and each is 1 inch by 1 inch in dimension.



Figure 18. Photograph of a Home-Made Gridded Sorting Tray featuring a random number matrix on the bottom.

7. Cookie cutter - a homemade cookie cutter, 1 inch by 1 inch is used in conjunction with the sorting tray to isolate each of the subsamples.
8. Labels - Self-adhesive labels are used to identify the contents of the sample bottle (*i.e.*, the picked sample).
9. Tape - used on label as additional adhesive.
10. Pencil - used to label sample bottle.
11. Crucible - or other small container, is used for short term, intermediate storage of the sample during the picking process.
12. Forceps - Fine tipped forceps are used to remove the organisms from the debris.
13. Illuminated magnifier - an optical aid to illuminate and magnify the sample during the picking process. Alternatively, magnifying visors and a desk lamp can be used.
14. Squirt bottle - filled with alcohol, used to rinse organisms into sample bottle.
15. Plexiglas - used to cover sample overnight to prevent evaporation.
16. Counter – used to count the number of organism removed from the sample.

Laboratory Safety Precautions

Protective eyewear should be worn during sample processing to prevent contact with the residual alcohol in the specimens and debris or at any time while handling alcohol, which can be a skin irritant and can cause damage to the eyes. All sample processing should occur in a well ventilated area to reduce inhalation of alcohol fumes.

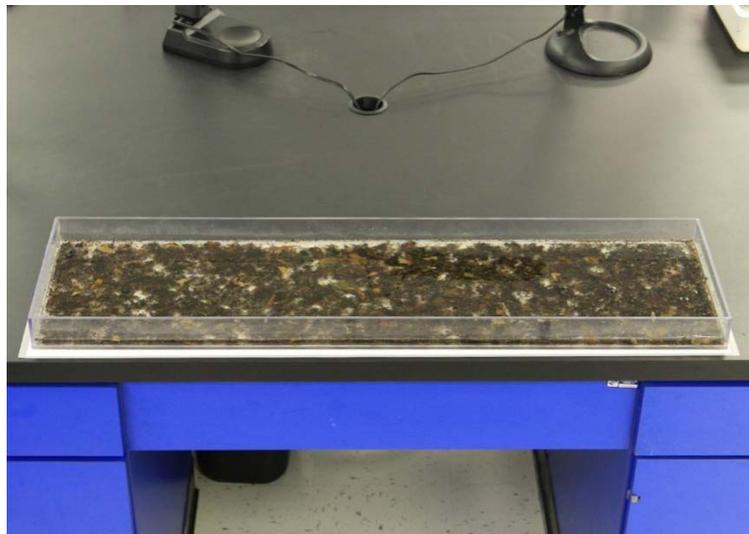
Benthic Sample Processing Methods

1. Select the sample to be sorted. A supervising biologist may provide the picker with a particular sample to be sorted. Be sure that the sample information (*e.g.*, date of collection, collector, stream name, county, AN-Code, etc.) on the vial matches the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook. Also mark the sign-out date for processing and your initials in the logbook.
2. Select a small bottle/vial that will hold the organisms after sorting is completed. Usually 10 mL bottle or 4 dram Vial is adequate for a 200-organisms sub-sample. A larger bottle or vial may be needed if the sample contains large organisms such as crayfish. In some cases, it may be necessary to split the sample into multiple bottles or vials.
3. Prepare a label for the sample bottle/vial(s):
 - It may be necessary to prepare a second label for the outside of the bottle/vial. If so, avoid using self-adhesive labels as the adhesive tends to lose its stickiness after exposure to alcohol.
 - Use a pencil or an archival quality ink pen on the labels (*e.g.*, Pigma Pens). Most inks will run if alcohol is spilled on the label.
 - Be sure to copy all information on the sample jar label onto the self-adhesive label. The label must include the following information:

- ✓ Stream Name
- ✓ Station Number (Random Number and/or AN-Code)
- ✓ Sample Date
- ✓ County
- ✓ Collection Method
- ✓ Initials of Sample Collector
- ✓ Initials of Sample Processor
- ✓ # of grids picked (to be added after the sample picking is done)
- ✓ # of organisms in final sample (to be added after the sample picking is done)
- ✓ Vial # out of Total Vials (to be added after the sample picking is done)

If any of this information is missing from the original sample jar label, notify the supervising biologist so that the error can be corrected.

4. Prepare the sample for sorting. This step is performed in a sink and should be done under a fume hood or in a well ventilated area.
 - a. Under a fume hood, open sample jar and pour contents into the # 30 mesh sieve. Capture the ethanol and transfer it to a long-term holding container for later disposal.
 - b. Rinse sample jar into sieve with water and examine jar to make sure all detritus has been removed.
 - c. Rinse the contents of the sieve in tap water to remove remaining alcohol and to rinse out fine sand and sediment.
 - d. Carefully rinse any large detritus (*i.e.* leaves) or stones, making sure that all organisms on these items are returned to the sieve. Discard the leaves and rocks after rinsing.



- e. Place the contents of the sieve in the gridded sorting tray. Fill the tray 1/3 full with water and gently swirl it until the contents are evenly distributed (**See Figure 19**). If the sample was

Figure 19. Photograph of a Gridded Sorting Tray with sample contents evenly distributed in water.

divided into more than one jar, wash the contents of the additional sample jars and combine them with the first jar's contents in the sorting tray at this point.

- f. Using a random number generator, select the first grid to be picked (*see Figure 20*). Using the "cookie cutter", isolate the organisms within the chosen grid and scoop the contents of the grid into a white enamel pan with just enough water in the bottom to easily maneuver the organisms. Be careful not to destroy any organisms during this step. Organisms with their head inside the grid are to be included within the grid. If you can't distinguish which end is the head, then the organism belongs in the grid that contains the largest portion of the body.



Figure 20. Photograph of a Gridded Sorting Tray with 5 grids randomly removed. Note that the sequence of numbers on the bottom of the tray known by referencing a piece of paper that has the locations of each grid mapped out.

5. Sorting (Picking)

- a. Fill a crucible or temporary storage vial with 75% ethanol. If preferred, another small wide-mouth container may be substituted for the crucible.
Note: A small piece of tape, rolled into a ring so the adhesive is exposed, may be attached to the bottom of the crucible to prevent tipping.



- b. Using fine-tipped forceps and illuminated magnifier or magnivisor (*see Figure 21*), remove all invertebrates from the sub-sample and transfer to the alcohol filled

Figure 21. Photograph of Biologist sorting a benthic sample under an illuminated magnifier. Note the enamel pan filled with some water and the temporary sample container.

crucible or labeled storage vial. Keep track of the number of organisms that have been picked.

- c. If leaves are present, be sure to examine both surfaces. Examine the debris for unusual clumps of twigs, leaves, or sand, which may be protective cases for some organisms. If cases are found, both the case and the organism should be picked. If the organism is in the case, the case and organism should be kept together. If an empty case is found, it should also be removed, but not counted towards the final number of organisms picked.
- d. If there is any doubt to the identity of an object (is it a seed or a bug?), it should be picked, but not counted. A senior biologist should be notified if a large number of questionable objects are present.
- e. When all the organisms appear to have been removed from the pan, agitate the contents of the pan and look again. Often the agitation will reorient an organism that was previously overlooked.
- f. Have a senior biologist inspect the pan after picking has been completed. The biologist will point out any organisms that have been overlooked or misidentified as detritus. As the picker becomes more proficient at his/her task, this step will be reduced in frequency.
- g. Discard the contents of the enamel pan by pouring the contents through a "waste sieve" in the sink. The contents of the waste sieve may be emptied into the trash as necessary.
- h. Continue the Sorting process repeatedly (steps 4-f through 5-e) until a subsample of 200 (+/- 20% is reached) (**see Figure 20 above**). Several rules must be observed in order to get a subsample that is both random and representative of the whole sample.
 1. The total organisms in the sample must be between 160 and 240 organisms. If fewer than 160 organisms have been collected, another grid is randomly chosen and steps 4-f through 5-e are repeated until at least 160 organisms are obtained or until the entire sample has been picked. Every attempt should be made to get the final subsample as close to 200 as possible. Therefore, the person conducting the sub-sampling should keep track of the approximate number of organisms per grid in order to know if one more grid will get the subsample number as close to 200 as possible.
 2. If subsampling should result in significantly more than 240 organisms in the subsample, then the subsample should be re-sampled to bring the number of organisms down to the 200 (+/- 20%) organism goal.

3. Should the 200 (+/- 20%) organism goal be reached in less than 4 grids, then picking should continue until 4 total grids have been picked and then that subsample should be re-sampled to reach the 200 (+/- 20%) organism goal. This step will ensure representativeness of the subsample compared to the total sample.

For further information about subsampling rules, refer to the EPA Rapid Bioassessment Protocol References listed in Chapter II. Section C. Part 1. PAGES 5, 6, 5a, and 6a. EPA's Rapid Habitat Assessment Form.

Note: Based on WVDEP's experience, >90% of the time, 4 or more grids out of 100 will need to be picked in order to reach the target 200 organism subsample for a 1m² kick area.

- i. Place the label made earlier inside the bottle/vial(s). If a second label is prepared for the outside of the bottle/vial, then affix it using tape. Be sure to write down the # of grids picked, # of organisms in final subsample, and if applicable, the Bottle/Vial # out of the Total Bottles/Vials for the subsample before you place the label inside the bottle/vial(s)
- j. Pour the subsample contents of the crucible (or temporary container) into the final storage bottle/vial(s). Use a squirt bottle containing alcohol to rinse the organisms from the crucible. Make sure that all organisms in the bottle/vial are fully submerged in the alcohol and that none are clinging to the sides of the bottle. Use the squirt bottle to rinse the sides of the bottle/vial, if necessary.
- k. If required, return the remainder of the unpicked sample to the original sample jar and preserve with alcohol. These samples may be processed later to determine picking efficiency.
- l. After a sample has been picked, record the date or return and your initials in the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook to indicate that the sample was returned from processing. Be sure that the sample information (e.g., date of collection, collector, stream name, county, AN-Code, # of bottle/vial(s), etc.) on the bottle/vial(s) matches the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook.

Laboratory Processing Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Sorting efficiency is evaluated for 2.5% of the samples. These samples are randomly selected after they are received by the laboratory, but before they are sent to the pickers. Pickers conduct processing of the sample as normal, but each time they are done picking a subsample grid in the enamel pan, a second picker (usually a senior

biologist) will review the pan for any missed organisms. The missed organisms for the entire sample are totaled.

Percent Sorting Efficiency (PSE)

The Percent Sorting Efficiency (PSE) (AKA Bias) can then be calculated by the following formula:

Equation 2. Percent Sorting Efficiency (PSE)

$$\frac{\text{\# Organisms Originally Sorted}}{\text{\# Organisms Recovered by Checker} + \text{\# Organisms Originally Sorted}} = \text{PSE}$$

A PSE \geq 90% is considered passing.

Pickers may also be instructed to retain the unpicked portion. The unpicked portion can then be checked by a senior biologist to determine if the number of grids that need to be picked to get a second subsample is comparable to the original pick. This will indicate if the sample was evenly distributed in the tray.

Section C. Identification of Benthic Macroinvertebrates

Ultimately, the WAB uses benthic macroinvertebrates to bioassess the condition of wadeable streams in WV. To accomplish this, the WAB uses a multi-metric index called the West Virginia Stream Condition Index (WVSCI). The WVSCI summarizes six biological metrics that represent elements of the structure and function of benthic macroinvertebrate communities. Taxonomic resolution for the WVSCI is family level except for Nematoda and Collembola. However, all taxa should be identified to the genus level or lowest practical taxon. All aquatic macroinvertebrates should be identified including insects, snails, clams, crustaceans (including crayfish), and worms.

Materials and Supplies

1. Dissecting microscope - for examination of gross features.
2. Compound microscope - for examining minute features.
3. Fine-tipped forceps - for manipulating specimens.
4. Fine-tipped probes - for manipulating specimens.
5. Petri dishes - hold specimens during identification.
6. Alcohol - 75% ethanol is used to preserve the samples and to prevent desiccation during identification.
7. Wash bottle - used for alcohol storage.
8. Microscope slides, cover slips, and mounting media - for examination of tiny specimens and/or body parts under a compound microscope.

9. Benthic macroinvertebrate lab sheet - standard for recording results of identification and enumeration.
10. Taxonomic Keys - (*see List of Taxonomic References below*)

List of Taxonomic References

The taxonomic references most frequently used by the WAB biologists for identification of macroinvertebrates include, but are not limited to:

- Brigham, A.R. 1982a. Coleoptera. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.
- Brigham, A.R. 1982b. Megaloptera. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.
- Brown, H.P. 1972. Aquatic Dryopoid Beetles (Coleoptera) of the United States. U. S. Government Printing Office.
- Burch, J.B. 1982. Freshwater Snails (Mollusca: Gastropoda) of North America. EPA-600-3-82-026.
- Edmunds, G.F., Jr., S.L. Jensen, and L. Berner. 1976. Mayflies of North and Central America. University of Minnesota Press.
- Epler, J.H. 1995. Identification Manual for the Larval Chironomidae (Diptera) of Florida. Revised Edition. Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Division of Water Facilities, Tallahassee, Florida.
- Epler, J.H. 1996. Identification Manual for the Water Beetles of Florida (Coleoptera: Dryopidae, Dytiscidae, Elmidae, Gyrinidae, Haliplidae, Hydraenidae, Hydrophilidae, Noteridae, Psephenidae, Ptilodactylidae, Scirtidae). Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Division of Water Facilities, Tallahassee, Florida.
- Epler, J.H. 2001. Identification Manual for the Larval Chironomidae (Diptera) of North and South Carolina. North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources, Division of Water Quality, Raleigh, North Carolina.
- Huggins, D.G. and W.U. Brigham. 1982. Odonata. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.

- Jezerinac, R.F., G.W. Stocker, and D.C. Tarter. 1995. The Crayfishes (Decapoda: Cambaridae) of West Virginia. Ohio Biological Survey Bulletin. New Series. Vol. 10, No.1.
- Lugo-Ortiz, C.R., and W.P. McCafferty. 1998. A New North American Genus of Baetidae (Ephemeroptera) and Key to *Baetis* Complex Genera. *Entomological News* **109**: 345-353.
- Merritt, R.W., and K.W. Cummins (*editors*). 1995. An Introduction to the Aquatic Insects of North America. 3rd edition. Kendall/Hunt Publishing Company, Dubuque, Iowa.
- Merritt, R.W., K.W. Cummins, and M.B. Berg (*editors*). 2008. An Introduction to the Aquatic Insects of North America. 4th edition/revised edition. Kendall/Hunt Publishing Company, Dubuque, Iowa.
- Peckarsky, B.L., P.R. Fraissinet, M.A. Penton, and D.J. Conklin, Jr. 1990. Freshwater Macroinvertebrates of Northeastern North America. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, New York.
- Pennack, R.W. 1978. Fresh-water Invertebrates of the United States. 2nd edition. John Wiley & Sons, New York.
- Ross, H.H. 1944. The Caddisflies, or Trichoptera, of Illinois. *Bulletin of the Illinois Natural History Survey* **23**: 1-326.
- Smith, D.G. 2001. Pennak's Freshwater Invertebrates of the United States: Porifera to Crustacea. 4th edition. John Wiley & Sons, New York.
- Stewart, K.W. and B.P. Stark. 1988. Nymphs of North American Stonefly Genera (Plecoptera). Entomological Society of America.
- Unzicker, J.D. and P.H. Carlson. 1982. Ephemeroptera. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.
- Unzicker, J.D. and V.H. McCaskill. 1982. Plecoptera. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.
- Unzicker, J.D.; V.H. Resh; and J. C. Morse. 1982. Trichoptera. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.

Wiggins, G.B. 1977. Larvae of the North American Caddisfly Genera (Trichoptera). University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Canada.

Wiggins, G.B. 1996. Larvae of the North American Caddisfly Genera (Trichoptera). 2nd edition. University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Canada.

White, D.S. 1982. Elmidae. *In* Brigham, A.R., W.U. Brigham, and A. Gnilka (*editors*). Aquatic Insects and Oligochaetes of North and South Carolina. Midwest Aquatic Enterprises. Mahomet, IL.

Safety Precautions

Protective eyewear should be worn during sample identification to prevent contact with the residual alcohol in the specimens and debris or at any time while handling alcohol, which can be a skin irritant and can cause damage to the eyes. All sample identification should occur in a well ventilated area to reduce inhalation of alcohol fumes.

Macroinvertebrate Identification Procedures

1. Check out the sample in the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook. The laboratory manager may pre-assign which taxonomist gets which sample and if that sample will be subject to a QA check. Be sure that the sample information (e.g., date of collection, collector, stream name, county, AN-Code, # of bottle/vial(s), etc.) on the vial matches the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook. Also mark the sign-out date for identification and your initials in the logbook.
2. Complete the top portion of a "Benthic Macroinvertebrate Lab Sheet" with the sample information (e.g., date of collection, collector, stream name, county, AN-Code, etc.) (**See**
3. **Figure 22 below**).
4. Using the taxonomic keys listed above (**see List of Taxonomic References above**); identify the contents of the sample to the family or genus level, depending on the specifications of the project. Use the reference collection as additional confirmation, if necessary. **IF YOU HAVE ANY UNCERTAINTY ABOUT THE IDENTIFICATION OF A SPECIMEN, CONSULT A FELLOW BIOLOGIST FOR CONFIRMATION.** If an organism is too small or damaged and cannot be identified to the designated taxonomic level, identify it to the lowest positively-identified taxon and document why the identification was not complete (e.g., immature or damaged specimens).
5. Record results of the identification and enumeration on a "Benthic Macroinvertebrate Lab Sheet" (**See**
6. **Figure 22 below**). Be sure to include notes for each taxa about immature or

damaged specimens, life stages other than larvae (i.e., Adults and Pupae), terrestrial specimens that were picked inadvertently, numbers of specimens pulled for reference collections, and likely characters that would place the specimen in a lower level taxon if you are unfamiliar with the organism.

WVDEP-WAB BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE LAB SHEET					
Stream Name: _____		AN-Code: WV _____		R#: _____	
Sample ID: _____		Collection Date (mm/dd/yy): _____		County, State: _____	
Sorted by: _____		Number of Grids Picked: _____		Number of Organisms Picked: _____	
ID By: _____		Collected By: _____			
Taxon ID/Taxon	Count	Taxon ID/Taxon	Count	Taxon ID/Taxon	Count
Annelida		Plecoptera		Diptera (Chronomidae)	
Amphipoda					
Isopoda					
				Diptera (other)	
Decapoda		Trichoptera			
Ephemeroptera					
		Megaloptera			
				Mollusca	
Odonata					
		Coleoptera			
				Other Taxa	

Figure 22. Example of a Benthic Macroinvertebrate Lab Sheet.

- Return the specimens to the original sample bottle and mark the label with an "X" to indicate the sample has been identified.

8. Return the identified sample bottle/vial(s) and corresponding lab sheet. Be sure that the sample information (e.g., date of collection, collector, stream name, county, AN-Code, # of bottle/vial(s), etc.) on the vial matches the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Logbook. Also mark the date of return from identification and your initials in the logbook.

Laboratory Identification Quality Assurance/Quality Control

The precision of the identification process is evaluated for 2.5% of the samples. These samples are randomly selected after they are received by the laboratory, but before they are sent to the taxonomists. Taxonomists conduct the identification and enumeration of the sample as normal. After they are done, if the sample is designated for a QA/QC check, then all of the specimens (mounted or loose) are passed on to the second taxonomist. The second taxonomist will identify and enumerate the sample in the same fashion as the first. From these two sets of data, two evaluations of precision can be calculated:

Percent Difference in Enumeration (PDE)

The Percent Difference in Enumeration (PDE) is calculated by the following formula:

Equation 3. Percent Difference in Enumeration (PDE)

$$\frac{(n_1 - n_2)}{(n_1 + n_2)} \times 100 = \text{PDE}$$

Where:

n_1 = # of organisms counted by taxonomist 1

n_2 = # of organisms counted by taxonomist 2

A PDE \leq 10% is considered passing.

Percent Taxonomic Difference (PTD)

Percent Taxonomic Difference is a comparison of the accuracy in identifications from one taxonomist to another. This begins thru the use of a Taxonomic Comparison Form. On this form, the identifications by both taxonomists are matched up to each other and then difference in enumerations between the two taxonomists is compared. The number of agreements is defined as the lower of the two numbers for the given taxon being compared.

The Percent Taxonomic Difference (PTD) is calculated by the following formula:

Equation 4. Percent Taxonomic Difference (PTD)

$$\left[1 - \frac{(\text{comp}_{\text{pos}})}{(N)} \right] \times 100 = \text{PTD}$$

Where:

N = Highest count of organisms from taxonomist 1 or 2

comp_{pos} = Total # of taxonomic agreements from the Taxonomic Comparison Form

A PTD ≤10% is considered passing for Family Level taxonomy.

A PTD ≤15% is considered passing for Genus Level taxonomy.

PTD is not an evaluation of which taxonomist is correct. However, the process does include a method by which conflicts in taxonomic identification are reconciled. After the PTD is calculated, both taxonomists and a third party sit down and attempt to figure out where the differences in identifications and enumerations are coming from. Reasons for the differences include:

1. Misidentification of the Taxon.

Example 1. One of the taxonomists may not be as familiar with a particular taxon as the other and keyed it wrong. This may be a consistent error in all of the QA samples involving the taxonomists.

Example 2. One taxonomist is using an outdated key that refers to a taxon that has been lumped with or is synonymous with another taxon.

Example 3. One of the taxonomists accidentally included a terrestrial specimen from a taxon that is very similar to an aquatic taxon.

2. Taxonomic Resolution.

Example 1. The first taxonomist may have inadvertently damaged a key feature of a specimen that prevented it from being identified by the second taxonomist to the same taxonomic level.

Example 2. One of the taxonomists may be better experienced and familiar with that particular taxon and be able to identify it the lower taxonomic level where the other taxonomist cannot.

3. Specimens Lost Between Taxonomists. This should be kept to a minimum if the two taxonomists view the sample before it is put back into the bottle/vial(s).

Example 1. Specimens may have been pulled from the sample (e.g., Reference Collection or Slide Mounting) and not viewed by the second taxonomist.

Example 2. Specimens stuck to the bodies of larger organisms (e.g., an Elmidae beetle stuck in the “armpit” of a large *Corydalus* specimen) are missed by one taxonomist.

Example 3. One taxonomist was including pupae, body parts, or empty shells/cases in the count while the other was not.

Example 4. One taxonomist may have counted partial organisms as whole organisms. This is most common with Oligochaeta as the head are

difficult to find and they often get broken up into pieces easily.

4. **Transcription, Translation, and Typographic (TTT) Errors.**

Example 1. One taxonomist meant to write down an 11 and accidentally wrote down a 1.

Example 2. The person who calculated the PTD mistook an 11 for a 2.

Example 3. The taxonomist wrote down a very similarly spelled taxon (e.g., *Thienemannimyia* vs. *Thienemanniella* vs. *Thienemannia*)

After this reconciliation, the PTD can be recalculated correcting for these most of these errors (called a corrected PTD).

Section D. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Data Analysis

Part 1. West Virginia Stream Condition Index (WVSCI)

WVSCI Reference

A detailed description of the procedures used to develop the WVSCI as well as the steps necessary to calculate final WVSCI scores can be found in the following document:

Gerritson, J., J. Burton, and M.T. Barbour. 2000. *A Stream Condition Index for West Virginia Wadeable Streams*. Tetra Tech, Inc. Owning Mills, MD.

Or on the web at:

http://www.wvdep.org/Docs/536_WV-Index.pdf

WVSCI Overview

All organisms identified for analysis using the WVSCI (including all Oligochaeta, Hirudinea, Acari, Mollusca, and Crustacea) should be identified to at least the Family level except for Nematoda and Collembola.

The following metrics are applied to the benthic data:

1. Family Level Taxa Richness
2. Family Level Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, Trichoptera (EPT) Taxa Richness
3. Percent EPT
4. Percent Contribution of Dominant 2 Family Level Taxa
5. Percent Chironomidae
6. Modified Family Level HBI (Hilsenhoff's Biotic Index)

The individual metric scores are then standardized on a 100 point scale based on best standard values for a set of reference sites or conditions. The scores are then averaged to give the WVSCI (West Virginia Stream Condition Index).

Restrictions for Calculating the WVSCI

- A. Sample methodology – Identical sampling area (4 – 0.25m²) and gear (0.5 m rectangular kicknet with **595µm mesh**) should be used in **riffle/run habitat**. In limited circumstances, 0.3 m d-frame nets with comparable mesh size can be used as long as **1 m² total area** is sampled.
- B. Comparable samples – The following scenarios should be considered before collecting benthic macroinvertebrate samples for biological health assessments because they are not necessarily associated with human perturbations:
- 1) **low flow** conditions in riffle/runs may affect benthic sampling efficiency by reducing the number of organisms being swept into the net,
 - 2) collecting samples following **drought** may result in reduced organism numbers and diversity,
 - 3) **high flow** conditions in riffle/runs may affect benthic sampling efficiency by reducing the number of organisms being captured in the net,
 - 4) collecting samples following a **scour or flood event** may result in reduced organism numbers and diversity.
- C. Laboratory subsampling – samples in which more than the target subsample size was picked (**200 ±20%**) should be re-sorted to obtain the preferred number of organisms. **As a rule-of thumb, samples containing less than 100 organisms should be scrutinized for comparability before calculating a WVSCI score.** These sites may be heavily impacted, or were recently subjected to drought or scour events.
- D. Taxonomic resolution – Taxonomic resolution for the WVSCI is **family level except for Nematoda and Collembola. This includes the non-insect groups like Oligochaeta, Hirudinea, Acari, Mollusca, and Crustacea.** If higher taxonomy is necessary (e.g., early instar or damaged specimens), then these taxa should not be counted in richness metrics unless they are believed to be distinct from other taxa identified in the sample. WVDEP WAB should be consulted for exact taxonomic resolution of some groups.
- E. Seasonality – Acceptable collection dates are from **April 15 to October 15.**
- F. Tolerance values – WVSCI metrics that rely on **tolerance values** (HBI) are **specifically calibrated** to those used by WAB and these specific tolerance values should be used for valid final WVSCI scores.
- G. WVSCI Calculations — Use only those best standard values (BSVs) and component metrics found in the WVSCI development document. Component metrics used for calculating WVSCI scores are restricted to those listed above.

Exclusion of any one of these metrics or the inclusion of additional metrics will result in an invalid final WVSCI score.

Using the WVSCI for Data Analysis

Macroinvertebrate data is evaluated through the preparation of a stream assessment chart (*see Figure 23 below*). This chart considers the biological and habitat conditions of each stream and compares them to those of the reference sites. Reference sites are those stations having optimal habitat (as defined by the RBP/EMAP matrix scores) and no obvious impairments in water quality. The number of reference sites selected depends on such variables as stream order and ecoregions. The framework for these assessments is the West Virginia Stream Characterization Index (WVSCI). Tetra Tech, Inc. developed this index specifically for use in West Virginia. Stream scores are plotted within this chart and the results are used for overall watershed assessments, 305(b) reporting and 303(d) listing. Streams falling in the green area are considered fully supporting (for 305(b) reporting) or non-impaired (for WAB reporting). The condition of streams in the gray area may be unclear and are considered “Insufficient Data” (305(b)) and non-impaired (for WAB reporting). Water quality data must be evaluated to determine if a stream in the gray area is threatened or fully supporting. Often best professional judgment cannot be avoided. The yellow, orange, and red areas contain streams that are not supporting (305(b)) or impaired (WAB reporting). All streams falling in the yellow, orange and red sections are subject to inclusion on the 303(d) list.

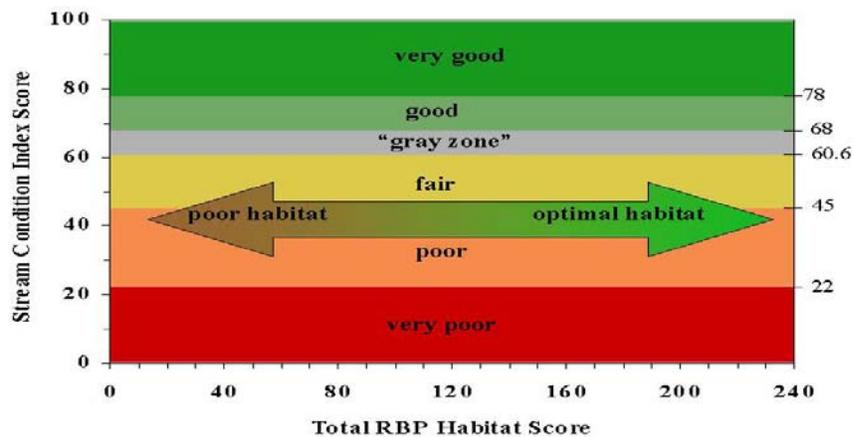


Figure 23. WVSCI vs. RBP Habitat Scoring Categories

Part 2. Dirty Null Stressor Identification Model

The benthic data is also imported into an analysis model that compares each sample's community structure to that a set of “reference” data with well known and established

stressor types (Metals, Sediment, Ionic Stress, and Reference Condition), also known as “Dirty Nulls”. The data that results from the Dirty Null Stressor Identification Model is a set of similarity indexes and probability percentages that help identify potential stressor or stressors to the stream community.

Chapter V. PERIPHYTON PROTOCOLS

Periphyton Overview

Periphyton is attached algae, *i.e.*, algae that grow on the exposed surfaces of rocks and other submerged objects. Phytobenthic (bottom-dwelling) algae are usually the dominant component of a periphyton community. Phytobenthic algae, the primary producers in the stream ecosystem, are sensitive indicators of change in lotic waters. Because it is attached to the substrate, the periphyton community integrates physical and chemical disturbances to a stream. Another advantage of using periphyton in water quality assessments is that the periphyton community contains a naturally high number of species, making data useful for statistical and numerical applications to assess water quality. Response time of the periphyton is rapid, as is recovery time, with recolonization after a disturbance often more rapid than for other organisms. Diatoms, in particular, are useful indicators of biological integrity because they are ubiquitous; at least a few can be found under almost any conditions. Most diatoms can be identified to species by experienced biologists and tolerances or sensitivities to specific changes in environmental conditions are known for many species. By using algal data in association with macroinvertebrate data, the biological integrity of stream ecosystems can be better ascertained.

Materials and Supplies

1. Support Ring – A piece of PVC pipe (1 cm long & 4 cm inside diameter) to delimit the sample area on rocks (12.56 cm² of area inside ring)
2. Scraping Tool - microspatula
3. Small brush - toothbrush that is replaced at least weekly
4. Sample container - 4 oz “specimen jar”
5. 10 % Formalin - for sample fixing/preservation
6. Cooler w/ Ice - for sample storage/preservation
7. Electrical Tape -for sealing lids of sample jars
8. Labels - labels are to be placed inside sample container & on outside
9. Clear Tape - to affix label to container
10. Squirt Bottle

Field Safety Precautions

Rubber gloves and protective eyewear should be worn during sample collection to avoid bacterial contamination and for personal health protection as many streams may have sharp objects embedded in the substrate (*e.g.*, glass, metal, wire, etc.). They should also be worn during sample preservation or at any time while handling formalin, a known carcinogen.

Field Sampling Procedures

Collect periphyton at benthic sampling sites (e.g., reference, random, TMDL Bio Sites, targeted sites) or as directed on the stream list. Periphyton may also be collected at big streams (large rivers where WVSCI is not applicable – Elk River near mouth), and at streams that are too deep for benthos collection (*i.e.*, water over the net) but not too deep to reach in and grab cobble to sample periphyton as a biological indicator for the site.

Ideally, samples should only be collected during stable flow conditions. After extremes of flooding or drought, a two-week period is required for adequate recolonization. Because sampling tends to be conducted within a short index period (random sites), periphyton will be collected when streams are not turbid (*i.e.*, the substrate is visible).

1. Label sample container with Stream Name, AN-Code, date, collector, and “w/ formalin”.
2. To be consistent, samples will only be collected from rocks (epilithic habitat) from riffle/run areas of the streams. Collect five separate cobble-sized rocks that are exposed to varying light conditions and contain varying periphyton communities (brown vs. green) and intensities from throughout the reach. This includes rocks with just green or brown algae, rocks with both intermixed, rocks with long stringy algae, and rocks with a layer of periphyton growing on top of a thick layer of silt or sand (which tend to be motile species). Even a seemingly clean rock will have an unseen or undetectable community of periphyton that can be quantified. If there are no rocks available from the reach, collect periphyton from removable wood (same technique as for rocks), documenting on the field sheet exactly what was sampled. These riffle/run areas should roughly coincide with the areas where benthic macroinvertebrates are collected (if benthos collected) to avoid sampling above and below a source. **The most important thing is to be representative of the site when picking the five rocks for the sample!!!**
3. Rinse the PVC ring, toothbrush, microspatula, and squirt bottle thoroughly with stream water at the site before each sampling event to avoid contamination from prior sampling of subsequent collections.
4. Using the PVC ring to delimit the sample area (12.56 cm²), use the microspatula to scrape **all algae** from **upper surface** of rocks into the sample jar. Use the toothbrush to loosen any remaining periphyton. In some cases, if the mineral content of the rock is just right, you may notice that you are removing a significant layer of the rock material along with the periphyton. In such a case, it is probably safe not to use the toothbrush after scraping since it is doubtful that any periphyton remains in the scraped area unless the rock is excessively fissured and rough.

5. Remove sampler and rinse loosened algae into the sample jar using clear stream water collected from that site in the squirt bottle. Repeat Step 5 until all of the periphyton from the five rocks (representing 62.8 cm² of sampled area) is composited into one sample jar.
6. Rinse the microspatula, toothbrush, and PVC ring into the sample, removing as much of the lingering periphyton as possible. Snap the labeled lid onto the container.
7. Rinse the PVC ring, toothbrush, microspatula, and squirt bottle thoroughly with stream water at the site after each sampling event to avoid contamination of subsequent collections.
8. A guideline for preservation is as follows: Assuming the sample jar is about 3/4 (120 ml) full, preserve with an adequate amount (a “plop”) of 10% formalin from the squeeze bottle) for sparse to normal periphyton amounts. Add more for samples with heavy amounts of green algae. **The specimens cannot be over preserved.** The specimen cups are graduated (ml) so adding the proper amount of formalin can be measured. **Take extra care when preserving, as formalin is a known carcinogen.** Note: Samples do not need to be preserved immediately. It may be easier to preserve all periphyton samples collected in a given day at one time – upon returning to office or hotel parking lot. Whether samples are fixed immediately or not, they should be placed in a cooler with ice. Sample jars should be taped by sealing the rim of the lid with electrical tape to minimize the chance of spillage or cross-contamination.
9. Record the number of rocks “scraped” from each of the varying habitats (riffle vs. run and sunlight exposure classes). For example, 2 rocks in riffle, 3 in run/3 rocks with full exposure, 1 with partial shade, 1 with partial exposure. The yes/no questions and comments box on the Habitat Assessment Form (*see Chapter II. Section C.Part 1. PAGE 9. Periphyton Collection Information*) will be used to aid in interpreting data from scoured or drought affected reaches.

Laboratory Methods

Periphyton identification and biomass determinations are performed by a private contractor. The contractor is required to have a degreed biologist on staff that performs the actual identifications. The contractor must adhere to the following protocols.

- A. **“Soft” Algae (Non-Diatoms)** – Relative and abundance are to be determined as follows:

Homogenize sample in a blender and pipette a subsample into a Palmer counting cell.

Dilute the sample if cells overlap too much for accurate counting. Identify and count 300 non-diatom algal units to the lowest taxonomic level at 400X magnification. Colonial species are to be counted as individual cells, when appropriate. Filamentous species should not be counted as individual cells, but as cell units of 10 micrometers in length. The number of “live” diatoms observed should also be recorded (identification will be done under a separate procedure). Record the numbers and species of “soft” algae on the bench sheet.

B. Diatoms – Diatoms are to be analyzed after the “soft” algal identifications are complete, as the clearing process will destroy soft tissue. Procedures are as follows:

- 1) Clear the diatom frustules of organic material using either nitric acid or hydrogen peroxide/potassium dichromate oxidation.
- 2) Prepare slides and identify diatoms to species or lowest taxonomic level possible.
- 3) Record all taxa encountered on the bench sheet to create a species list prior to enumeration. Continue identification until no new taxa are found after a 2-3 minute scan. To obtain quantitative data, count a minimum of 600 valves and record the taxa and number encountered on the bench sheet.

Periphyton Data Assessment

An assessment of biological integrity can be made based on the periphyton data. The goal is to categorize water quality as excellent, good, fair, or poor and to determine the degree and cause of aquatic life use impairments in fair or poor streams.

Biological indices represent mathematical models of community changes. Changes in water quality will affect resident biota, and indices that reflect these changes in a particular community are useful biological indicators of water quality. The periphyton community, especially diatoms, is a useful biological indicator because:

- They are attached to the substrate and, therefore, subjected to any immediate or prolonged disturbances;
- Diatoms are ubiquitous, with at least a few individuals found under almost any aquatic conditions;
- Total number of taxa at any given site is usually high enough for use in calculating various metrics;
- Diatoms, especially the most abundant species, are identifiable to species by trained professionals;
- Tolerance of or sensitivity to changes (autecological requirements) is known or suspected for many species or assemblages of diatoms; and
- Periphyton communities, especially diatoms, have a rapid response and recovery time because of their relatively short lifecycle (as compared to fish or macroinvertebrates) and their ability to quickly recolonize formerly disturbed (impacted) sites.

Several metrics have been used successfully to assess water quality conditions using periphyton. Some have the diagnostic ability to indicate the type of impact (nutrient enrichment, toxicity, acidity, salinity, sewage (organic) pollution, and siltation).

Periphyton Quality Assurance and Quality Control

Sample labels are to be accurate and complete and contain all the information discussed above. Sampling equipment will be checked for residual algal material, rubbed clean and thoroughly rinsed with stream water before and after each sampling event.

Duplicate samples will be collected from 2.5% of the sites sampled and only when at least two people are on a sampling team. Periphyton will be collected along with other activities at the designated duplicate WAB sites. Both duplicates are collected at the same date and approximate time (as equipment sharing will allow) by different individuals. Extreme care is taken to assure that the second duplicate is not taken from an area that may have been depleted by the first duplicate. The duplicate data will be analyzed to ensure precision and repeatability of the sampling technique. Every effort is made to assure that different teams perform the duplicate sampling throughout the sampling season to ensure that all variability is being captured. The variances between individual techniques will be documented and used in future training sessions or individual re-training. ***See Chapter VIII. Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates for additional information.***

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the collection and handling of periphyton samples is included. In the field, biological sampling teams will consist of two people. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. Individuals who are more experienced in collecting periphyton will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Chapter VI. STREAM FLOW MEASUREMENT

Section A. Sum of Partial Discharges Method

Most discharge measurements of stream flow are made by the **Sum of Partial Discharges Method** using a velocity-meter because it is adaptable to a wide range of velocities and is practically unlimited as to the total discharge that can be measured. Essentially, the method consists of: 1) measuring the velocity of flow in and the area of each of several parts of a cross-sectional transect; 2) computing the discharge in each part as the product of the velocity and area; and 3) summing the partial discharges to obtain the total.

The usual method of making a discharge measurement is explained in **Figure 24**, which shows the cross-section of a channel.

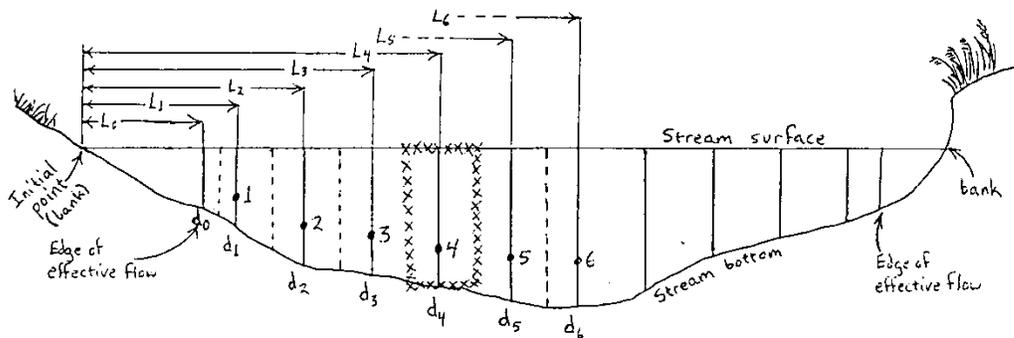


Figure 24. Cross section of stream channel

Where:

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, - Velocity measurement points or observation points for each of six consecutive partial sections.

$L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, L_5, L_6$ - Distances in feet from the initial point to each observation point's vertical intersect with the stream surface for each of six consecutive partial sections.

$d_1, d_2, d_3, d_4, d_5, d_6$ - Depths of water in feet at the observation points in each of six consecutive partial sections.

Dotted lines indicate the boundaries of partial sections.

The depth of water is measured by rod at observation points 1, 2, 3, 4, and so forth. The velocity of the water is measured by velocity meter at each of these locations at such position(s) in the vertical that the mean velocity in the vertical is obtained.

The discharge past a partial section is computed by the following equation:

Equation 5. Calculation of Partial Stream Flow or Discharge

$$Q_4 = (V_4)(d_4) \frac{[(L_5 - L_3)]}{2}$$

Where:

Q_4 = discharge or flow in cubic feet per second through partial section 4 (**see Figure 24 above**)

V_4 = mean velocity in feet per second at location 4.

d_4 = depth of water in feet and tenths of a foot (not inches) at location 4.

L_3, L_4, L_5 = distances in feet and tenths of a foot (not inches) from the initial point to locations 3, 4, and 5, respectively (**see Figure 24 above**).

The area defined by this formula is that shown by the X-line highlight around location 4 in **Figure 24 above**.

The summation of the discharges for all the partial sections is the total discharge of the stream. It is calculated by computer program once all the necessary data are plugged into the program (**See Table 10 below for an example of the data used to calculate the total discharge or flow**).

Materials and Supplies

1. Wading Rod – for measuring stream depth and setting depth of flow measuring device.
2. Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate – for measuring water velocity.
3. Tape Measure in feet and tenths – for determining the distance between velocity readings.
4. Flow Record Sheets (**see Chapter II. Section C. Part 2. APPENDIX #1 - Stream Discharge (Flow)**) – for recording data collected along the flow transect and for final computation of flow.
5. Pencils.
6. Lightweight clipboard with string to drape around neck - for carrying flow sheet while keeping both hands free to manipulate wading rod and Flo-mate.

Operation and Maintenance of Flo-Mate

For a more complete description of the Care and Operation of the Model 2000 Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate, consult the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer (see **Figure 25**. Cover of Model 2000 Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate Instruction Manual **below**).

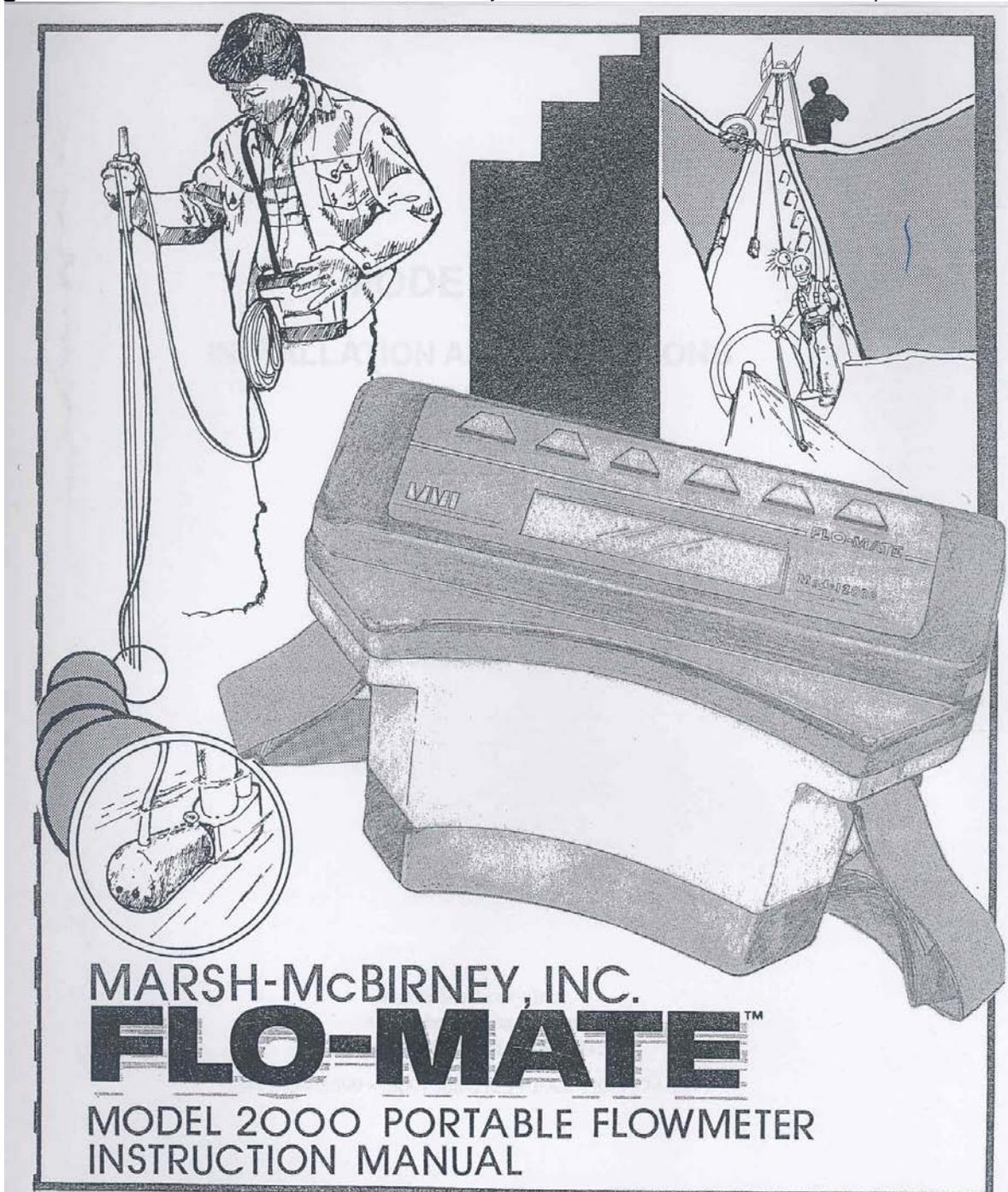


Figure 25. Cover of Model 2000 Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate Instruction Manual

Theory of Operation (From the Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate Manual, 1990)

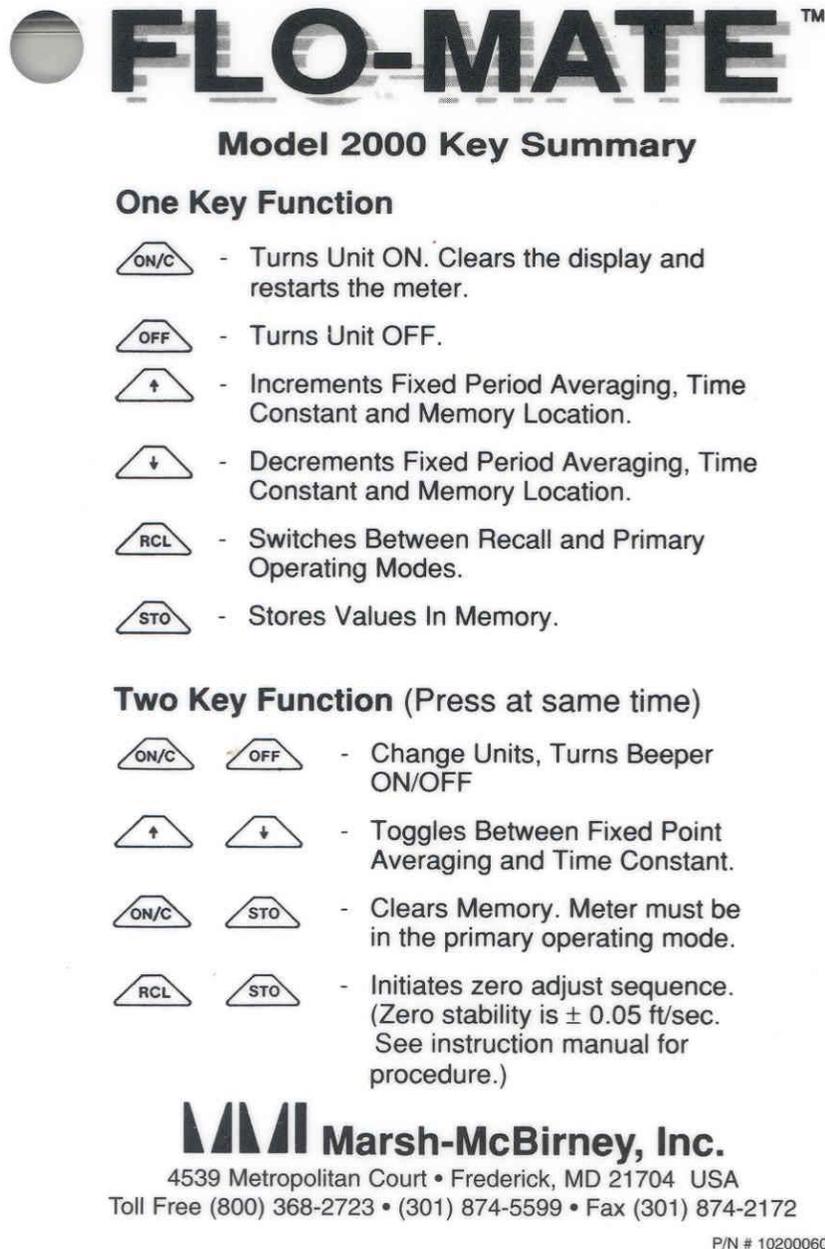
The Flo-Mate measures velocity using the Faraday law of electromagnetic induction. This law states that as a conductor moves through a magnetic field, a voltage is produced. The magnitude of this voltage is directly proportional to the velocity at which the conductor moves through the magnetic field.

When the velocity approaches the sensor from directly in front, then the direction of the flow, the magnetic field, and the sensed voltage are mutually perpendicular to each other. Hence, the voltage output will represent the velocity of the flow at the electrodes.

The sensor is equipped with an electromagnetic coil that produces the magnetic field. A pair of carbon electrodes measure the voltage produced by the velocity of the conductor, which in this case is the flowing liquid. The measured voltage is processed by the electronics and output as a linear measurement of velocity.

Flo-Mate Settings

The use of the function keys are described in **Figure 266**.



FLO-MATE™

Model 2000 Key Summary

One Key Function

-  - Turns Unit ON. Clears the display and restarts the meter.
-  - Turns Unit OFF.
-  - Increments Fixed Period Averaging, Time Constant and Memory Location.
-  - Decrements Fixed Period Averaging, Time Constant and Memory Location.
-  - Switches Between Recall and Primary Operating Modes.
-  - Stores Values In Memory.

Two Key Function (Press at same time)

-   - Change Units, Turns Beeper ON/OFF
-   - Toggles Between Fixed Point Averaging and Time Constant.
-   - Clears Memory. Meter must be in the primary operating mode.
-   - Initiates zero adjust sequence. (Zero stability is ± 0.05 ft/sec. See instruction manual for procedure.)

Marsh-McBirney, Inc.
 4539 Metropolitan Court • Frederick, MD 21704 USA
 Toll Free (800) 368-2723 • (301) 874-5599 • Fax (301) 874-2172
 P/N # 10200601

Figure 26. Key Function descriptions for the Model 2000 Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate

The Watershed Assessment Branch (WAB) has a standard of collecting velocity measurements in feet per second using Fixed Point Averaging Filtering in 20 second intervals.

Units-You can check the unit to see that it is reading in FT/S by pressing ON/C and OFF keys simultaneously. Press these two keys until FT/S is displayed. You can choose to have the beeper on or off (watch for the little speaker symbol in the lower right-hand corner) by toggling between:

- FT/S no beeper
- M/S no beeper
- FT/S with beeper
- M/S with beeper

Filtering-The fluid dynamics around the sensor electrodes may cause the readings to bounce around. To stabilize the readings, the output to the display is dampened. The display can be dampened by Fixed Point Averaging (FPA) or by time constant filtering (rC). Fixed Point Averaging is an average of velocities over a fixed period of time. Time constant filtering is a software algorithm that mimics an RC analog circuit.

To check the unit and see what filtering method is being used, press the Up and Down arrow keys at the same time until the meter displays FPA (fixed point average). The display will show the letters rC when you first switch to the time constant mode.

Except for the first period, the display is updated at the end of each averaging period. For example, if the FPA is set to 20 seconds, the display is updated once every twenty seconds. The FPA display will have a horizontal time bar under the velocity output. The time bar provides an indication as to the amount of time left until the display is updated.

Time Increment-To set the increment, press the up arrow or down arrow to see if the unit is set to read in 20 second intervals. Note that fixed point averaging is limited to whole seconds in the range of 2-120 seconds.

Maintenance of Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate

According to the Marsh-McBirney Flo-Mate manual, the only routine maintenance of the unit is confined to cleaning the sensor, changing the batteries (two alkaline D Cell batteries), and zero-adjusting the instrument. Any instrument calibration or repair must be conducted by the manufacturer.

Cleaning

Non conductive coatings like oil and grease can cause errors or interfere with the velocity readings. This can be remedied by routinely cleaning the sensor head with soap and water. **Do not use any solvents to clean the sensor head!** If the problem persists, clean the electrodes with very fine grit (600) sandpaper. In error readings persist in the field or where you do not have immediate access to soap and water, you may try to use your fingers underwater to rub away oil and grease from the sensor

electrodes. Fine clay (smaller than 600 grit) and pencil erasers may also be effective at removing oil and grease.

Zero Check and Adjust

Every month, the meter will need to undergo a zero check and possibly a zero adjust.

Zero Check Procedure

1. Clean the sensor with soap and water as stated above. Make sure the unit is set to operate in FT/S using fixed point averaging (FPA) filtering (**see Flo-Mate Settings above for more about this**).
2. Place the sensor in a plastic five-gallon bucket of water. Sensor should be 3 inches away from the sides and bottom of the bucket. This could possibly be achieved by attaching the sensor to the flow rod during the zero check and balancing the flow rod in a hands-free standing position in the bucket. Make sure the water is not moving and wait 10 to 15 minutes. **DO NOT TAKE ANY READINGS WHILE WAITING.**

NOTE: When conducting the Zero Check or Zero Adjust procedure at the WVDEP Headquarters in Charleston, be sure that there is not a passing train during the Zero Check Procedure. It has been observed that passing trains create excessive vibrations in the laboratory end of the building to the extent that it may seriously affect the Zero Check.

3. Using a filter value of 5 seconds (*i.e.*, change the instrument's increment reading from 20 to 5 seconds using the up and down arrows) take a reading from the unit in the still bucket. **BE SURE NOT TO CAUSE ANY EXCESS VIBRATIONS VIA THE SENSOR CORD OR FROM UNNECESSARY MOVEMENT.** Zero Stability is a reading of +/- 0.05 ft/sec. Record the unit number, the initial zero stability reading for entry into a database later. If the reading is out of this range, the unit will need to be Zero Adjusted (Steps 4-8). If the unit is within the acceptable range, restore the increment reading back to 20.

Zero Adjust Procedure

Note: Each key in the zero adjust sequence must be pressed within 5 seconds of the previous key. If the time between key entries is longer than 5 seconds or if a wrong key is pressed, the unit will display an ERR 3. Turn the unit OFF then back ON and try again.

4. Keep the position of the sensor as described above in step 2. Press STO and RCL keys at the same time. The unit will display a "3".
5. Use the "down" arrow to decrement to zero. The number "32" will be displayed.
6. Unit will decrement itself to zero and turn off. Zero adjust is complete. Return to step 1 above and repeat the zero check to make sure the instrument is

within the acceptable range and record the final zero stability reading. If the unit is still out of range, you may attempt the zero adjust sequence again. If repeated attempts to zero adjust fail to correct the unit, it will need to be sent back to the manufacturer for recalibration and possibly repair. If the final zero check is acceptable, restore the increment reading back to 20 and turn the unit off.

Flow Meter Accuracy

The Flow Meter accuracy is +/- 2% of reading + zero stability (which is +/- 0.05 ft/sec). The range is -0.5 to +19.99 ft/sec.

Using the Flo-Mate

1. Insert the sensor peg on the bottom of the sliding flow rod shaft into the hole on the back of the sensor. Position the three electrical sensors horizontal to the plane of the bottom (the foot) of the flow rod. If the sensor is properly positioned, the cord should be coming out of the top of the sensor perfectly parallel to the flow rod shaft. Tighten the thumb screw so that the sensor will not slide off or rotate out of position.
2. AFTER you have set up your flow transect (***See Setting up the Transect below under Stream Flow Measurement Procedures***) and have the sensor in the water, turn the instrument by pressing the ON/C button.
3. Allow the instrument to run through two cycles. The first 20 second cycle is to allow the turbulence and eddies around the flow rod and sensor to reach equilibrium so that the final reading during the second cycle is as accurate as possible. Since the real time readings are only visible during the first cycle (***as stated above in Flo-Mate Settings***), it is recommended that you initialize the second cycle by pressing the ON/C button. In the rare case that the readout during the first cycle stabilizes well before the end of the 20 second cycle, you may initialize the second cycle early by clearing the display. At the end of the second cycle, record the readout. This readout is the average velocity for the second 20 second cycle only. It does not consider the velocity data gathered during the first cycle.
4. Move the sensor to the second increment in the stream, and press the ON/C button to initiate a **new** cycle to begin (you don't want the 20 second cycle reading to include movement while you were moving the wading staff). Repeat Step 2. Repeat steps 2 & 3 until the flow transect is complete.

Notes about error readings

The purpose of displaying errors is to alert the user of possible problems with either the unit or application. Errors can be displayed as messages or numerical codes. There are three error messages and five numerical codes. With the exception of Err 2, error

codes freeze the display. Turn the unit OFF then back ON to clear the display. If after corrective action the error still exists, call the factory. Descriptions of the meanings of each error message are as follows:

Low Bat – Indicates low batteries. Replace the batteries

Noise – Indicates excessive electrical noise is present in the velocity that will interfere with normal operation. This will cause the display to blank out.

Note: The noise flag usually comes on for few a seconds after the sensor is submerged even though there is no noise present. This is normal.

Con Lost – Indicates that either the sensor electrodes are out of the water or they have become coated with oil or grease. After 5 minutes, the unit will turn itself OFF. If the electrodes are coated, clean them (see *Cleaning* above).

Error#1 – There is a problem with sensor drive circuit. Check sensor disconnect.

Error#2 – Memory full error. Memory must be cleared before another reading can be stored.

Error#3 – Incorrect zero-adjust-start sequence. Reinitiate zero-adjust-start sequence.

Error#4 – Zero offset is greater than the zero adjust range. Repeat the zero-adjust procedure. If the error is still displayed, the unit needs servicing.

Error#5 – Conductivity lost or noise detected during zero adjust. This is usually caused by the sensor being out of the water.

Note: The sensor on the flow meter has an operating temperature of 0°C to 72°C (32°F to 160°F). The electronics on the flow meter have an operating temperature of 0°C to 50°C (32°F to 122°F).

Stream Flow Measurement Procedures

Table 10. Example of Flow Measurement Form: Recording field data.

STREAM DISCHARGE MEASUREMENT (Calculated in cubic feet per second – cfs)					
Measurer	<i>Doug Wood</i>	Meter ID	2	Time	12 noon
Location	Distance	Depth	Velocity	Discharge cfs	
Bank	1.3				
EEF	2.6	This is the Edge of Effective Flow			
1	2.93	0.64			
2	3.59	0.90			
3	4.25	0.93			
4	4.91	0.97			
5	5.57	1.01			
6	6.23	1.12			
7	6.89	1.06			
8	7.55	0.92			
9	8.21	0.88			
10	8.87	0.63			
11	9.2	0.60			
EEF	9.9	This is the Edge of Effective Flow			
Bank	10.5				
Notes:	Some turbulence from rocky substrate. Slightly skewed flow. Drizzling rain.				

9.2 ← Edges of effective
 -2.6 ←
 6.6 ← Effective flow width
 ←
 $6.6 \div 10 = 0.66$ maximum distance between each of the ten measuring points.

Note: ALL MEASUREMENTS TAKEN IN INCHES MUST BE CONVERTED TO FEET AND TENTHS/HUNDREDTHS IN ORDER TO GIVE A WIDTH MEASUREMENT THAT CAN BE USED IN CALCULATING FLOW/DISCHARGE IN UNITS OF CUBIC FEET PER SECOND (cfs).

Setting up the Transect

1. Select a stream reach having the following characteristics:
 - a. A straight stretch of water with the horizontal velocity vectors running parallel to the stream bank
 - b. A stable, even streambed without large rocks, weeds and protruding obstructions that create turbulence.
 - c. A level streambed configuration to reduce variation in the vertical components of velocity.

All of these conditions are seldom satisfied. Nevertheless, select the best possible reach using these criteria.

2. Next, select a flow transect. An ideal transect:
 - a. Is perpendicular to the direction of flow (velocity vectors). It is often very hard to find an area of stream where 100% of the flow is perpendicular to the flow transect. If there is no better place to take the velocity readings, then the number of varying velocity vectors on a flow transect should be kept to a minimum.
 - b. Has uniform bed and stream banks
 - c. Has a minimum velocity of 0.05 feet/second. Avoid transects with eddies or areas of “dead” water. **(However, you should include positive number readings of less than 0.05 feet/second on the flow sheet should you encounter them.)**
 - d. Adequate depth for the meter to function. Typically, this means the entire velocity probe bulb should be immersed. **Please note if readings were taken with part of the bulb exposed to air. If the bulb was removed from the flow rod and placed on the substrate, please note this as well.**

Note: You may alter the channel to help meet these requirements at the selected site before you begin making any measurements, but NEVER AFTER measurement has begun.

3. Determine the width of the stream by placing a tape measure perpendicular to the stream flow.
4. Determine the width of “effective flow”. The effective flow is the segment of the transect having measurable downstream velocity and exclusive of “dead” areas or reverse flows (eddies) beside the stream banks. Do not exclude similar anomalous flow areas that do not touch the banks from the width measurement (bank to bank). For simplicity, utilize this effective flow width in establishing endpoints for measurement of velocity and depth (**see Table 10 above**).

5. Determine spacing of velocity measurements. There is no set rule about how to space the measurements other than there is a required minimum number of measurements depending on the width of the effective flow (see arrow bullets below this paragraph). **Velocity measurements should be spaced to document and define areas of turbulence, extreme changes in velocity, and sudden changes in depth. For example, if there is a large obstacle to the flow like an unmovable boulder directly in, in front of, or behind the flow transect, a few extra measurements should be taken on each side of the boulder and spaced closer than the average increment. The velocity measurements can also be spaced farther apart in areas where the velocity and depth are more uniform.**
 - In streams with effective flow width greater than 3 feet, take no fewer than ten nearly even-spaced measurements within the effective flow transect. For example, if the effective flow is 3.5 feet wide, the minimum number of ten measurements could be taken every 4.2 inches (this is 10% of the effective flow width, 42 inches).
 - If the effective flow width is less than 3 feet, take as many measurements as possible using an increment no smaller than 0.3 ft using best professional judgment.
 - If the effective flow is >10 feet, a minimum of 20 measurements should be obtained.
6. Record the following information on the **APPENDIX #1** - Stream Discharge (Flow) **form**:
 - a. Record the flow measurer.
 - b. The time of the flow measurement.
 - c. The assigned number of the flow meter used.
 - d. Any conditions that might affect the flow measurement (*i.e.*, wind, rain, skewed bottom configuration, ice and leaf packs in the water, necessity of removing the probe bulb from the rod due to extremely shallow water depth).

Taking Flow Measurements

7. Begin Flow measurement (**See Figure 24 above**):
 - a. For simplicity, establish the bank as the initial point. Then record the distance (L_0) from the initial point to the edge of effective flow. Record the depth at the edge of effective flow (d_0).
 - b. Record the distance (L_1) from the edge of effective flow to the first velocity measuring point along the tape. (This point is called a “vertical”). This first vertical should be established at a distance very close to the edge of effective flow (about 0.3-0.5 feet). Record water depth (d_1) at this vertical.

- c. If the depth is less than 2 feet, use the one-point 0.6-depth method for measuring velocity: Adjust the rod so that the sensor is at the depth that is six-tenths below the water surface (indicated by “1” in **Figure 24 above** by lining up the rod’s sliding “foot” with the tenth scale vernier on the top of the flow rod (e.g., if total depth is 0.9 foot, then line up the “0” line on the rod’s sliding foot scale with “9” on the tenth vernier. If depth is 1.2 feet, then line up the “1” sliding foot scale line with the “2” vernier line). If the depth is greater than 2 feet, two readings are taken: 0.2 and 0.8 from the surface.
- To set the sensor at 0.2 of the depth, multiply the total depth by two and repeat the above procedure. For a depth of 2.7 feet, this would be 5.4 feet. Line up the 5 on the foot scale with 4 on the tenth scale.
 - To set the sensor at 0.8 of the depth, divide the total depth by two and repeat the above procedure. For a depth of 2.7 feet, this would be 1.35 feet. Line the 1 on the foot scale with 0.35 on the tenth scale.

Note: To obtain a discharge figure for entry in the computer program for a two-reading measurement, calculate the average of the two velocity readings, and use this average velocity for calculating the discharge in the two-reading transect increment.

- d. Place the sensor at the proper depth and allow it to adjust to the velocity before starting the observation. The following precautions should be taken:
- Hold the rod perfectly straight up with the sensor pointing upstream into the velocity vector (parallel). The bow wave produced by the wire at the top of the sensor will be symmetrical if the sensor is pointing directly into the flow. A ribbon attached to the bottom of the flow rod also helps visualize the flow direction.
- Note:* The manufacturer says the sensor shape produces a cosine response that greatly reduces errors due to sensor positioning. For example, if the front of the sensor is pointed away from the flow at a 10° angle, the cosine of 10° is 0.98480. This is only 1.5% lower than the actual velocity. What this means is that even though you may not have the flow reading positioned 100% parallel to the flow vector, a few degrees off of center will yield pretty accurate results. Nevertheless, you should still try to position the sensor as close to parallel to the flow vector as possible! Experience shows the manufacturer’s rhetoric is just that. In the real world, slight angles away from parallel with the velocity vector, produce noticeably different velocity readings.
- Stand downstream from the meter and at a distance so that you do not create turbulence that will impact the reading. In very small streams, attempt to straddle the wetted area to decrease your feet’s contributions to altering the flow.

- e. Allow the Flo-Mate to go through two complete cycles (40 seconds total) as described in ***Using the Flo-Mate above.***
 - f. Record the second readout on the “velocity” column on the form.
8. Repeat Step 7 at each vertical, recording the distance, depth, and velocity. Be sure to record the distance to and depth of the far bank and vertical point of effective flow.

Calculating Flow Using a Spreadsheet

1. Open Excel, and then open the file in Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\TOOLS\Flow Template.xls.
2. At the bottom of the spreadsheet select the tab for the number of actual flow readings obtained. If there is no tab for the number of measurements you have taken, you will need to insert a new worksheet, copy contents of another worksheet into the new worksheet, and add or delete rows as needed.
3. Type in the left and right edge-of-effective-flow values in the “no flow” rows of the “Distance” column.
4. Enter the distance, depth, and velocity in the appropriate columns.
5. The flow or discharge in CFS is automatically calculated in the lower right-hand corner of the spreadsheet.

Section B. Measuring Flow Using a Bucket and Stop Watch

On some rare occasions, it may be possible or more practical to measure flow using a bucket of known volume and a stop watch. Such instances include measuring flows coming out of a pipe where there is adequate room to place the bucket underneath the pipe. The procedure to measure a flow in this manner is to measure the seconds it takes to fill up the bucket. It is recommended that you measure this at least three times and take the average time as the final reading. Converting this measurement into cubic feet per second (CFS) units may require some research into conversion units (e.g., gallons or liters into cubic feet). However, the flow template sheet mentioned above (located at Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\Flow Template.xls) contains a worksheet already calibrated to convert measurements using gallons per second into cubic feet per second. Simply enter the seconds it took the fill up the bucket, the volume of the bucket in gallons and the resultant CFS will be calculated at the end of the row. Document on the field sheet the flow method and the individual and final average CFS.

Flow Measurement Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Before use, each Flo-mate velocity-meter should be examined for wear and fouling, and adjustments should be made as required.

Zero check and adjust logbooks are maintained for each instrument and entered into a database. Any instrument failing to meet zero check requirements is zero adjusted or shipped to the manufacturer for diagnosis and repair. Flow meters are checked monthly and may be zero checked and adjusted in the field if necessary.

Each flow meter has an identification number, which is recorded on the habitat assessment sheet each time it is used. If any instrument fails a zero check, readings taken prior to the failed zero check will be examined for reliability and accuracy. Documentation of the instrument used at each site will help to keep data loss to a minimum. All repair logs to flow meters are documented and maintained by the manufacturer and noted in a repair log.

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the measurement and collection of flow data is included. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. Individual training will occur simultaneously on the same stream so the results can be compared to the group average. Readings that deviate exceptionally from the norm will be examined for errors. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in determining flows will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results before they are allowed to measure flows solo. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Chapter VII. SUBSTRATE CHARACTERIZATION (INCLUDING GRADIENT)

Materials and Supplies

1. 100 meter Measuring Tape – used to delineate the length of the substrate characterization reach and to demarcate the data points along this reach.
2. Flagging Tape – used to mark the eleven data point intervals in the substrate transect.
3. Survey Extension Pole – used to determine stream width and data points along each transect. Also used in conjunction with the clear plastic tubing to measure the rise in the stream between the two ends of the reach.
4. Thalweg Pole – used to measure the thalweg and to determine the substrate character at each transect data point. Also used in conjunction with the clear plastic tubing to measure the rise in the stream between the two ends of the reach.
5. Handheld Eye Level – used as an alternative method to measure the rise in the stream between the two ends of the reach.
6. Water Level– made of clear plastic tubing with valves on each end; used to measure the rise in the stream between the two ends of the reach.
7. Relative Bed Stability Form – Forms for substrate characterization are a not a normal component of the WAB habitat sheet and are documented on appendix sheets (**See Chapter II.Section C.Part 2. APPENDIX #4 – Substrate Characterization (Pebble Count) including Gradient**).

Procedures

Part 1. Establishing Reach and Transects

1. Determine the substrate characterization reach by multiplying the average stream width (as determined during the Rapid Bioassessment Protocol survey) by 40. The minimum and maximum widths are 100 and 500 meters, respectively. Record the reach length on the Habitat Assessment Form (**See Chapter II.Section C.Part 2. APPENDIX #4 – Substrate Characterization (Pebble Count) including Gradient**).
2. Determine the transect intervals by dividing the total reach length by 10. Measurements are taken at each of these transects including the upstream and downstream endpoints for a total of 11 transects. Each transect is assigned a letter, with the first (downstream) transect identified as Transect A and the upstream terminus being Transect K.

Part 2. Substrate Measurement (AKA Pebble Count), Thalweg Profile, and Bankfull Height

1. Begin at Transect A and work upstream. Mark the measurer and recorder of the data.
2. Using the survey extension pole, determine the wetted stream width. Divide the stream width by four to determine the measurement points. Measurements will be taken at the right descending bank (0% of the wetted-width), right-center (25% of the wetted-width), center (50% of the wetted-width), left-center (75% of the wetted-width), and at the left descending bank (100% of the wetted-width). **Note: If a split channel is encountered one of two things can occur:**
 - A) **If the split channel features a bar (bar definition: a channel feature below the bankfull height that is dry during baseflow conditions)** then conduct the measurements at that transect as if there was only one channel and note the presence of the bar. Any measurements that fall on the bar should be treated just as if it was inundated with water, but noted as being taken on a bar.
 - B) **If the split channel features an island (island definition: a channel feature even with the surrounding flood plain or above the bankfull height that remains dry even at bankfull flow)** then conduct a separate transect in each channel for the length of the island. The situation should be documented and the second transect information is recorded continuing the transect letters down the alphabet starting with J.
3. To take a substrate measurement, hold the thalweg pole vertically at the transect point and lower it straight down to the bottom. Pick up the particle at the tip of the pole (if it is not a boulder or bedrock). Using the markings on the thalweg pole, measure the particle at its median diameter. Each particle will have three dimensions: width, depth, and height. Measure the "middle" dimension, i.e., the dimension that is neither the largest nor smallest. Record the size class the particle falls into based on the following table (**see Table 11 below**):

Table 11. Substrate Size Classes for Substrate Characterization (Pebble Counts)

Class	Code	Size	Description
Bedrock	BR	>4000 mm	Bigger than car
Boulder	BL	>250-4000 mm	Basketball to car
Cobble	CB	>64-250 mm	Tennis ball to Basketball
Coarse Gravel	CG	>16-64 mm	Marble to Tennis ball
Fine Gravel	FG	>2-16 mm	Ladybug to marble
Sand	SA	>0.06-2 mm	Gritty between fingers
Silt & Fines	ST	<0.06 mm	Smooth, not gritty (silt & muck)
Clay	CL	>4000 mm	Slick/ hard clay or hard-pan clay bottom
Leaves	LD	Regardless of size	Leaf packs
Wood	WD	Regardless of size	Root wads, snags, logs, sticks

NOTE: In cases where there is a deposit of fine material (silt or sand) on top of another substrate type, you must use the THUNK test to determine which layer to count. The THUNK test consists of slowly lowering your thalweg pole straight down to the bottom as normal. If your pole hits the particle abruptly and makes a sort of “THUNK” sound, then the deposit of fine material is not considered and you count the underlying material. If your pole hits the bottom and can continue down to some degree with minimal resistance, then you record the fine material on top. Much of this determination relies upon experience and best professional judgment. Be sure to confer with your team partner and if in doubt, write notes.

4. Repeat this step for each of the five measurement points.
5. Determine the thalweg of the transect. The thalweg is the deepest part of the stream channel at the transect. Use the thalweg pole to determine water depth at the thalweg. **Read the depth on the side of the thalweg pole to avoid the wave produced by turbulence.**
6. The bankfull height is defined as the channel height that is filled by moderate-sized flood events that occur every one or two years. Look for a variety of bank characteristics to determine the bankfull height. Often there is an obvious slope break that differentiates the channel from a flat floodplain higher than the channel. A transition zone sometimes exists between exposed substrate and vegetation, which marks the bankfull height. Also, it may be determined by moss or vegetation growing on rocks along the banks. Sometimes the most obvious characteristic to look for is the presence of drift material (e.g., leaves, trash) along the bank or on overhanging branches. **Be sure to record a minimum of three bankfull height measurements throughout the sample reach. These measurements can occur anywhere along the reach, but should be spaced out along the reach.**
7. Repeat these steps for Transects B through K. The next transect can be located by moving upstream the transect interval as calculated above using the 100m measuring tape as a guide. Be sure the data from each transect is recorded in the appropriate space on the data sheet.

Part 3. Gradient Measurement

IMPORTANT: Gradient measurements must be taken along the full length of the reach. If the full reach is not measured with the tape measure, the gradient calculation will be incorrect and the time taken to record this data will be wasted.

There are two options for devices to measure slope: the Handheld Eye Level and the Water Level. Each device has its positives and negatives and each should be considered when selecting a device.

The Handheld Eye Level is much smaller than the Water Level in both weight and volume, so it may be more ideal in situations where a lengthy hike is necessary. It also is possible to measure longer distances with the Handheld Eye Level if the stream is straight enough and there are not major line-of-sight issues (*i.e.*, overhanging vegetation, houses, bends, etc.). Larger reaches (*e.g.*, >250 m) may benefit from the use of the Handheld Eye Level in both ease of use and reduction in the amount of time to obtain the Gradient Measured. On the negative side, the Handheld Eye Level is less accurate than the water level. It can also be problematic in raining conditions as the lenses can fog up. In addition, if two shorter people are working together, it may become necessary to use shorter distances between readings so that the person at the downstream end can point out with a stick or even read the level mark.

The Water Level is definitely more accurate. But the distance between readings is limited (usually to 20 m) by the length of tubing. In addition, high gradient streams may require one to shorten the length of the tube in order to capture the reading on the downstream end. The Water Level is ideal for situations with dense overhanging vegetation that prevent the use of the Handheld Eye Level. Because of its weight (the tubing and water inside the tubing) may be more useful when the sample site is immediately near the roadside and jeep.

Measurement Methodology

The primary method is to use a handheld eye level. In the Handheld Eye Level Method, the slope is measured by “backsiting” or “backshooting” downstream between the two reach ends. If a situation occurs where using the handheld eye level is not feasible (*e.g.*, the stream is too sinuous or there is too much overhanging vegetation) then the Water Level Method may be used instead to cover that distance.

The secondary method is to use a water level in the form of clear plastic tubing with some sort of length measuring device on each end (*e.g.*, the Thalweg and Survey Extension Poles). If a situation occurs where using the water level is not feasible (*e.g.*, the stream goes under a road or culvert) then the handheld eye level may be used instead to cover that distance.

Handheld Eye Level

Note: Each individual should determine and remember their eye level height (the point on the survey pole that their eye is level with) before doing any slope measurements using the handheld eye level. Also, keep in mind that this point can change when wearing different wading boots or footwear.

1. One individual stands at the water surface along the bank with the handheld eye level while the other holds the survey extension pole at the water surface downstream (as far as the individual can see accurately with the handheld eye level).
2. Looking through the eye level, the upstream individual determines where along the vertical surface of the survey extension pole their eye is level. The upstream individual will instruct the downstream individual to move a horizontal marker (e.g., finger, stick, pencil, thalweg pole) up or down to the same spot. The upstream individual's eye level height is then subtracted from the measured height to determine the rise of the stream for that distance. This value is recorded on the field form.
3. The upstream individual must now move to the position of the downstream individual (which can be marked by stacking rocks or with placement of an object or flagging) and the downstream individual moves down as far as the upstream individual can see accurately with the handheld eye level). Repeat the measurements as described until the downstream end has been reached.

Water Level Method

1. Fill the tubing by holding both ends level and pouring stream water collected in a cubitainer into the tubing until full. An alternative method to fill the tubing is to put stretch the tubing along the stream and submerge the upstream end under the water surface while siphoning the downstream end until enough of a draw is created to fill the tube.
2. Each partner secures an end by placing a rubber stopper or thumb into the end of the tubing, and then stretching the tubing to length along the contour of the stream starting at the upstream end of the reach.
3. Place the surveyor pole at water level at the downstream end. Stretch the tubing along the surveyor pole with the end of the tube at least to the 1 m mark (or higher if necessary). To help hold the tube against the pole, you may use your foot to help hold the tube at water level. Perform the same steps at the upstream end with the exception of using the thalweg pole.
4. When both ends are in position, the upstream individual must remove the stopper or thumb from the end of the tubing, followed by the downstream individual. The water level will oscillate until equilibrium is reached. Once the water level in the tube is stable, record the approximate location of the meniscus on each end, then subtract the upstream from the downstream measurement. Record this as the change in elevation or rise of that stream segment.

5. The upstream individual must now move to the position of the downstream individual (which can be marked by stacking rocks or with placement of an object or flagging). The tubing is again stretched to length and the method is repeated. Repeat the measurements as described until the downstream end has been reached

NOTE: If you encounter a high waterfall in the reach, measure the rise of the waterfall from the edge (if safe) of the fall to the splash-zone below using the surveyor pole and record it in one of the extra blanks on the field form. Also describe the reading and include what it is (*i.e.* waterfall) and where in the reach the waterfall was located (transect location). Then continue measurements past the waterfall as normal.

The final gradient measurement (% Gradient) is calculated after data entry via a query calculation:

Equation 6. Calculation of Percent Gradient

$$\% \text{ Gradient} = \frac{\text{Sum of Rises}}{\text{Reach Length}} \times 100$$

Where:

Sum of Rises = the summation of all the measured rises within the reach in meters

Reach Length = the total length of the reach in meters

Substrate Characterization Data Analysis

All of this data (Pebble Count, Thalweg Profile, Bankfull Height, and Gradient) are entered into the WAB database and numerous values and statistics are calculated via a series of queries. These values define the approximate characteristics of the stream's substrate (D_{50} or average particle size) and the relative extent of impairment by sedimentation that is occurring (D_{84} or bankfull particle size).

Substrate Characterization Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the collection and recording of Substrate Characterization data is included. Individual training will occur simultaneously on the same stream so the results can be compared to the group average. Readings that deviate exceptionally from the norm will be examined for errors. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, Substrate Characterization teams will consist of two people. Individuals who are more experienced in measuring Substrate Characterization data will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Chapter VIII. MISCELLANEOUS SAMPLING

Section A. Field Blanks and Duplicates

Overview

Duplicate sampling and field blanks must be performed at a minimum of 2.5% of our sites. To assure we meet these requirements, each team list will have a designated duplicate and field blank. Procedures for performing duplicates and field blanks are presented below.

Part 1. Field Blanks

Field blanks are simply samples of deionized water that are preserved in the field. The purpose of the field blank is to detect onsite contamination and verify the purity of the sample fixatives.

Obtaining the Field Blank Water

Before leaving the office, obtain the deionized water by collecting it directly from the laboratory supplied containers.

Procedures for obtaining water from the laboratory supplied containers are as follows:

- 1) Fill up an unused, one-gallon cubitainer with some water (approximately 100 mL).
- 2) Screw on the lid, shake the rinse water, and dump. Repeat.
- 3) After two rinses, completely fill up the one-gallon cubitainer, expunge any remaining air, and place in the vehicle to be used in the field as a source for the field blank water.

Field blanks are to be prepared in the field only and not in the laboratory or garage. A stream location is sometimes designated on the sample list for a field blank. If you miss the exact location indicated on the sheet, prepare a field blank at the next location. The reason why field blanks are indicated on your list is to remind you to do it AND to assure that field blanks are prepared at random locations and times.

A field blank will consist of any parameters that are or may be analyzed during the work week. This may include:

- 1 full cubitainer for Unfixed Samples (Chlorides, Hot Acidity, Alkalinity, TSS, Sulfates, Lab pH, Lab Cond., Cold Acidity, Total Orthophosphate, etc.)
- 1 full cubitainer for Sulfuric Acid Preserved Samples (Total Phosphorous, TKN, NO₂-NO₃-N, Unionized NH₃)
- ½ full cubitainer for Nitric Acid Preserved Samples (All Total Metals)

- ½ full cubitainer for Filtered Nitric Acid Preserved Samples (All Dissolved Metals)
- ½ full cubitainer for Filtered Unfixed Samples (Dissolved Orthophosphate)

Do not prepare a field blank for fecal samples, as the deionized water is not sterile.

Field Blank Field Procedures

- 1) To prepare a field blank, retrieve your pre-filled one-gallon cubitainer with DI water from storage in the vehicle.
- 2) Label an appropriate number of one liter cubitainers in a manner that it will appear to be an actual water sample to the lab, but will also be recognizable as a field blank to WAB employees.
- 3) Fix and handle the samples as you would do for a stream sample by substituting the DI water in the one-gallon cubitainer for actual stream water (including filtering for dissolved parameters if that was or will be done during the week).
- 4) After the sample has been submitted to the lab, write "FIELD BLANK" at the top of the DEP copy (white) of the Analysis Request Form before turning it in with the other forms.

Part 2. Duplicate Samples

Wadeable Benthic Sites (Random, Targeted, and TMDL Bio)

With the exception of GPS and Water Quality Sonde readings, a Wadeable Benthic site is to be duplicated in its entirety. Each team member should treat the site as though he/she is sampling alone: Do your own habitat, water quality and benthic and periphyton collection. The two sets of forms and benthic and water samples should be clearly marked with Dup #1 and Dup #2. On-site water quality data (*i.e.*, pH, Conductivity, DO, Temperature) should only be recorded on the first duplicate form (Dup #1).

Sites to be duplicated are indicated on the team lists. These sites are randomly selected and the main purpose of indicating these sites is to remind you to perform duplicate sampling and to assure that duplicates are performed at random locations and times. It is possible that the site selected is unsuitable for benthic sampling or has insufficient habitat to conduct duplicate benthos collections. If this is the case, the duplicate can be performed at an alternate site. Additionally, if you encounter a site that is ideal for duplicate sampling before you get to your designated site, you may conduct the duplicate at that site and drop the designated one. The important thing is that duplicate sampling is performed for the given group of samples or team list.

TMDL (Water Quality and Limited Habitat)

Duplicate samples for non-biological TMDL samples are limited to water quality only. There is no need to submit a duplicate TMDL-Initial or TMDL-Secondary habitat form, as most field personnel will be working solo and unable to replicate this portion. Duplication will be limited to the water quality parameters assigned to that site; *i.e.*, if the site is fecal only, just do fecal.

Duplicates for TMDL samples should be conducted at sites where the most parameters on the list are collected (if such sites exist on the list) and should be rotated to different sites each sampling event.

Field Blanks and Duplicates Quality Assurance/Quality Control

Sample labels are to be accurate and complete and contain all the information discussed above. Sampling equipment will be checked for contaminants and excess dirt or moisture cleaned before and after each sampling event. Lot numbers of all preservatives are recorded on the "Analysis Request Form" for each sample submitted and entered into the database to allow for easy tracking.

The field blank and duplicate data are looked at by Watershed Assessment Branch staff and scrutinized to find any possible discrepancies, contamination, or faults in the sampling methods and techniques. Any problems are brought to the attention of the program management and steps are made to immediately correct the problem. Data that is related to the problem are flagged with notes concerning the details of the situation so that decisions can be made whether or not to include the data in any further assessments or analysis.

Once a year, all field participants in the WAB attend mandatory training sessions in March-April prior to the initiation of the major sampling season. The purpose of these sessions is to ensure that all field personnel are familiar with habitat sampling protocols and calibrated to sampling standards. A hands-on session concerning the collection and handling of water quality samples is included. Any persons unable to attend the annual training session will be instructed and evaluated on the job in the following month by one of the WAB training instructors. In the field, individuals who are more experienced in collecting water quality field blanks and duplicates will be teamed up with the less experienced to assure reinforcement of training and accurate results. This document is also provided to all program personnel for review and use in the field.

Section B. Source Sampling Procedures for TMDL Monitoring

Source Sampling Overview

This section covers some of the techniques used to document sources during the Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) sampling and modeling process. This is a very important component of TMDL sampling as a good understanding of the location and nature of various pollutant sources will result in better TMDL models. It is necessary to document all sources of importance and relevance encountered and forward this information to the TMDL Source Tracker, whose primary task is to catalogue, document, and quantify as much pollutant source information as possible for the ongoing TMDL.

The following instructions are from a memo from the TMDL source tracker concerning various TMDL sources:

AMD/AML

Some AMD/AML sources are selected to be included on the TMDL sample lists and will be sampled quarterly for AMD parameters and flow. One may encounter other AMD/AML sources on these and other streams that are not on this sample list while sampling. A source form can be filled out for these other sources as it is deemed appropriate. Include at least field readings, estimated flow, GPS coordinates, pictures, and the visible impact on stream. A sample is not needed unless it is suspected that this is a one-time event or intermittent source. The Field Supervisor will forward a copy to the Source Tracker and they will let you know if any follow-up is needed. Generally, the Source Tracker will follow up with additional source sampling.

Here are some tips about how to address AMD Sources previously published from a January 2007 Memo:

- ✓ AMD sources can discharge via pipes and culverts or simply as seeps from the hillside/stream bank, narrow channel-ways, and/or an artesian upwelling.
- ✓ A good strategy for locating AMD sources is to hike up the receiving stream towards the potential site looking closely for pour points, precipitates on the bottom (orange, white, black), water discoloration (opaque blue/greenish). It is also useful to routinely check YSI field readings of the receiving stream for changes as you move up the watershed. Increasing conductivity and decreasing pH values in the receiving stream as you move up may indicate that you are getting closer to a source. Underground mine discharges are typically 54 degrees F (12.2 degrees C). You can use stream temperatures to help guide you to sources.
- ✓ If you locate a cluster of AMD sources that collect into a common channel before entering the receiving stream, it is acceptable to sample the combined sources/channel below them to get the cumulative concentrations/impacts of the discharge. Also, it would be beneficial to get GPS coordinates for each source

portal even though you won't be sampling them individually; however, be certain to capture coordinates at the location of a grab sample and flow.

- ✓ If you discover a new source that has never been identified before (i.e., not currently on your TMDL list) and it appears substantial/significant it should be sampled. The terms substantial and/or significant can vary in their meaning among individuals. Examples of sources that should be considered substantial/significant are: 1) A small source volumetrically but with high concentrations of dissolved ions flowing into a stream causing discoloration due to precipitates and/or causing noticeable changes to field readings, 2) A large source volumetrically that constitutes a large proportion of the total flow in the receiving stream and substantially alters field readings – this type may not be as concentrated with dissolved ions or have very low pH values like the smaller source but because of its volume should be considered for sampling. Small trickles and seeps that ooze out of the bank and do not appear to influence the receiving stream are typically not sampled (in some areas these are numerous and would quickly overwhelm the budget anyway). Check YSI field readings in stream below the discharge if you are unsure – slowly moving away from the source to evaluate its potential impact. In most cases, it comes down to BPJ (best professional judgment).
- ✓ Photos are extremely important for source sampling since many of them are only visited one time. Several photos of the source should be taken along with its pour point into the receiving stream – describing and detailing its impact, etc.
- ✓ GPS coordinates and directions to the site are also critical. Driving directions and hiking directions should be clear and concise. Check GPS's to be sure they have been switched to NAD 83. All of the source tracking sites we will be doing in the Cheat in January will have coordinates associated with them. However, these coordinates were derived using GIS – not GPS field readings. Therefore they should be considered as approximate locations. In some cases the coordinates will probably be fairly accurate. Other locations are very approximate as they are reported locations that have not yet been confirmed, so you may need to search harder. Be prepared to collect grab samples and flow measurements at longer distances from the vehicle, which may require backpacking with the filtering apparatus, preservatives, and flow equipment.
- ✓ TMDL topo maps will have the new source tracking sites marked in pink. In general, the source sites were assigned to a particular sample list based on their proximity to their monthly TMDL list of sites.
- ✓ Drawings, maps and good written descriptions of the source and what it does to the receiving stream are beneficial. As always document the local land use and any other pertinent info about the site.
- ✓ The Cheat Sheet has some good tips on recognizing sources, etc.
- ✓ If you arrive at a suspected source location and cannot locate a source, check the field water chemistry (conductivity and pH) of the receiving stream/waterbody. If the stream does not appear to be influenced by a source based on the field readings, and sources cannot be located after a sufficient search, the source tracking obligations are fulfilled.

- ✓ Remember, the absolute data requirements for source tracking are GPS locations, grab samples (indicating chemical properties, i.e., YSI), flow measurements, and photographs. If a stream is too small to sample for flow using the Marsh McBirney flow meter, you may perform a timed-fill technique to estimate time required for a source flow to fill a volumetrically known container. Small flexible (smashable into the substrate) buckets and gallon or liter size cubes with upper side cut off, can be used as flow gathering devices – simply record the filling time and repeat as many times as deemed necessary. This should be done at least three times, using the average time among measurements as the recorded data. For example, 3.2 seconds to fill a 1-liter container. You may also use a small container (fecal bottle) to fill a larger container (1 liter cube) to desired level – keeping track of the time all the while. It is also common to have to measure part of a flow and estimate the total flow on this partial measurement; or even do a visual estimate based on a visual comparison of the source flow to another known/measured flow.

Permitted Sources

If it is suspected that a permitted discharge is not within permit limits and is having a negative impact on the stream sample on a particular day, it would be very helpful to the TMDL model to have a sample of the permitted discharge (and its flow) on the same day that the stream sample is taken.

Other Sources

It is not necessary to collect samples from “common occurrence” pollutant sources like pastures or log jobs. Reserve source sampling for the rare or severe instances that are impacting the stream samples on a particular day. If it is suspected that runoff from a specific source (e.g., problem log job or dairy manure pond overflow) is impacting the stream sample, go ahead and get a source sample if it is practical to do so. If it is not practical to get a sample, any documentation that can be provided will be helpful (e.g., GPS coordinates, directions, pictures). Any general source information that may need to be passed on to the Source Tracker can be sent via email.

Section C. Ambient Water Quality Monitoring

Under Construction

Chapter IX. FIELD EQUIPMENT CHECKLIST

Personal Equipment		
	Waders	Essential...our signature piece of equipment
	Rain Gear	Stay Dry...or mostly Dry
	Personal Gear	Luggage, etc.
	Water Bottle	Stay Hydrated!
	Personal First Aid Kit	Small Red Fanny Bags
Weekly Needs		
	GPS Units	Various Garmin Models assigned per jeep (Keep in Camera Bag, Backpack, or Jeep)
	Water Quality Sonde	Various models assigned per jeep; Take inside at end of week; Calibrate at beginning of week or day; Cross-checked Monthly; Keep in Water Lab Jeep Stalls or Sonde Cabinet
	Camera	Various Models assigned per jeep; Take inside at end of week and Keep in Water Lab Jeep Stalls
	Ice	From Ice Machine in the general garage area or buy at store
	95% EtOH	In Cylinder Room
Paperwork and Clipboard Stuff		
	Stream List	Get Assignment from Janice
	Maps	Topographic, WV Gazetteer, WV County Roads
	Habitat Forms	Main WAB Form, Write-In the Rain Version, Front Page only version (for Dry or Access denied sites), Flow Appendix Sheet, Glide/Pool RBP Appendix Sheet, TMDL Forms, Fish Hobo Form; all on the G: drive
	Analysis Request Form	In the Water Lab Cabinets; Extras in Janice's Office
	Bug Jar Labels	Inner (on waterproof paper) and Outer; on the G: drive
	Periphyton Labels	Same label for inside and out; on the G: drive
	SOP	Get a copy from Janice or the G: drive
	Personal Field Books/Notepads	For the biomorph to write notes on while the Geomorph is away. Extras in Water Lab
	WAB Brochures/Pamphlets	To give to interested parties while in the field
	Data Request Forms	To give to interested parties while in the field; Get from Karen Light
	Clipboards	Assigned to each person
	Pencils and Pens	Get out of our Cabinet in the Mail Room or See Karen Light for Office Supplies
	Compass	To get your North Bearing
	Laptop	Update w/ Maps, WCMS Projects, Shapefiles, DOH County Maps and Database as needed

Jeep Maintenance		
	Fix-A-Flat	Action Packer or under backseat.
	Come-Along	Often stored under backseat.
	Tow Straps	Often stored under backseat.
	Collapsible Shovel	Often stored under backseat.
	Axe	Often stored under backseat.
	Tools	Screwdrivers, wrenches, ratchets, etc.
	Power Inverter	12 Volt DC to AC used to charge Laptops, Drill, etc.
	Flashlight	MANDATORY! In Action Packer?
	Car Phone	Hide in vehicle in console or glove box.
	Lab & Vehicle Phone Number Sheet	Should always stay in vehicle in glove box, middle console, or under sun visor.
Miscellaneous Jeep Stuff (Safety and Backup Supplies)		
	Action Packer	To store seldom used equipment
	First Aid Kit	MANDATORY! Should be checked regularly
	Fire Extinguisher	MANDATORY! Should be checked regularly
	Latex Gloves	To protect hands in nasty looking streams; Refills kept in Water Lab
	Handi-Wipes	To approximate cleaning of the hands. Refills in Water Lab
	Insect Repellent	DEET works the best; spray clothing only and keep off skin and out of eyes and mouth
	Blaze Orange Vest	Extras in Water Lab
	Life Vest/PFD	
	Machete	To help clear a path thru brush and briars
	Toilet Paper	"Acquire" from bathroom or hotel ☺
	AA Batteries	For GPS and Sonde Units; New ones in Water Lab
	C Cell Batteries	For Sondes; New ones in Water Lab
	D cell Batteries	For Flow Meters; New ones in Water Lab
	pH Standards	To recalibrate or check pH probe in field; In Water Lab
	Conductivity Standards	To recalibrate or check Conductivity probe in field; In Water Lab
	DO Maintenance Kits	To replace a DO membrane in field; Kept with YSI/Hydrolab; Extras In Water Lab
	pH Strips	To test sample fixation; Refills in Water Lab
	Flagging	To mark Transects and sites for easy identification; Extras in Water Lab

Water Quality Sampling (TMDL and WAB)		
	Fecal Coliform Bottles	Stored in Cage #1 in room 1193
	Cubitainers	Stored in Cage #1 in room 1193
	Lids for Cubitainers	Used if Cubitainers do not come with lids; Stored in Cage #1 in room 1193
	HNO ₃	Refills in Water Lab under sinks; One extra in Action packer?
	H ₂ SO ₄	Refills in Water Lab under sinks; One extra in Action packer?
	New Filter Apparatus (Primary)	Drill (w/Rechargeable Batteries and Recharger), Peristaltic Pump Board, Tubing, Disc and/or Cartridge Filters; Replacement Tubing and Filters are in the Water Lab
	Old Filter Apparatus (as a backup)	Funnel, Filter Sieve, Flask, Hand Pump, Filter Papers, DI Bottle; Acid wash once at end of week and store in large Zip-Lock; Old extra ones in Water Lab; Make sure DI Bottle is not contaminated-Wash regularly
	Plastic File Case	To keep the filter apparatus or supplies clean and dry
	Sharpie	New ones in Water Lab drawers
	Small Zip-Lock Bags	To store individual fecal samples; Refills in Water Lab cabinets; One extra in Action packer?
	Large Zip-Lock Bags	To store multiple fecal samples; Refills in Water Lab cabinets; One extra in Action packer?
	Paper towels	To dab away excess water; "acquire" from janitor's closet ☺.
	Stainless Steel Bucket or Sample Tube	To sample from bridges
	Rope	To sample from bridges; Also part of Jeep Maintenance
	Large Ice Chest	To store samples in field; In Water's Garage Area
	Field Blanks (DI Water)	Get from sealed laboratory boxes, put into 1 gallon cubitainer, and mark with a check
Flow Measurement (TMDL and WAB)		
	Measuring Tape	Marked in tenths of a foot; Do not use metric; New ones in Water Lab
	Flow Rod w/Vector Ribbon	Marked in tenths of a foot; Do not use metric.
	Flow Meter	Numbered per unit
Photography (TMDL and WAB)		
	Extra CD Disks	3"CD-R/RWs or Memory Sticks depending on model

Macroinvertebrate Sampling (Mainly Summer WAB)		
	Surber-on-a-Stick	Remember to check for holes; handle marked with depth increments
	D-Net	Remember to check for holes; handle marked with depth increments
	Brush	To scrape at cobble and boulders; One extra in Action Packer would be a good idea
	Forceps	To pick macroinvertebrates off nets; One extra in Action packer?
	Sieve	To sift through benthic material; Extras in Water Lab; One extra in Action packer?
	Plastic tray or container	To temporarily store organic material until sand is put in bottom of bug jar first
	Wash Bottle	To rinse benthic material; doesn't need to be sterile; also used for Periphyton Sampling; new ones in Water Lab
	Plastic Bucket	To temporarily store benthic material during kicks
	Bug Jars	Large sizes for more permanent storage; In Cylinder Room off main garage
	Old Ice Chest or Box	To store Bug Jars
	Clear Packing Tape & Dispenser	To adhere a label on sample jars; Also used for Periphyton labels; Refills in Storage Cabinet in Water Lab
	Macroinvertebrate Book	Keep in the jeep for field bug reference
	100 m Measuring Tape	Extras stored in Water Lab
	Thalweg Pole with centimeter increments	To measure stream depths for stream reach characterization; also used for Pebble Count Measurement
Periphyton Sampling		
	Scraping Tool	To scrape at the rocks; A microspatula or spoon-type instrument; Extras in Water Lab drawer; One extra in Action Packer?
	Small Brush (Toothbrush)	To brush at the rocks; One extra in Action Packer? Change once a week; Refills in Water Lab drawers
	Sample Container	4 oz "specimen jar"; Refills in Water Lab cabinets
	10 % Formalin	In a labeled dropper style bottle: WATCH YOUR EYES! Stored under hooded sink in Water Lab; Recommend double sealing this in a larger container
	Electrical Tape	To seal the periphyton container; Refills in Water Lab drawer
	PVC Ring	To delineate the periphyton sample area on a rock
	Small Ice Chest	To separate periphyton samples (nasty formalin) from the other water samples.

Chapter X. CHEAT SHEET

The Cheat Sheet can be used as a quick field guide to this SOP and can be found on the network at:

Q:\WATER RESOURCES\WAB\SOP'S\2009.zip

**West
Virginia
Department of
Environmental
Protection
Watershed Branch**

2009 Standard Operating Procedures



Front Cover Photo: Otter Creek in Otter Creek Wilderness Area, Monongahela National Forest (photo by Mike Whitman)

Back Cover Photo: North Fork of South Branch of Potomac River near Cabins, WV (photo by Kevin Seagle)